THE NATURAL METHOD OF TEACHING.

The First Book.

Being the

ACCIDENCE IN QUESTIONS and ANSWERS,

Explained, Amended, Abridged, and Fitted to the Capacity and Use of the lowest Form:

Leading the Learner

From { Letters to Syllables. / Syllables to Words: / Words to Sentences. 1. Single. 2. Compounded. Where is added an account of the Transposition, and most usual Ellipses of Words in a Sentence.

By perpetual, plain, easie and necessary, { I. *Exemples* to be imitated. / II. *Rules* to direct the imitation. / III. *Exercises* Latin and English to ascertain the imitation by the direction of the Rules.

Into which is inserted

I. A *Vocabulary* of *English* and *Latin* Words under each part of Speech, reduced into tolerable order.

II. *Sententiæ Pueriles*, English and Latin, consisting of the same Words put into plain Sentences under every Syntactick Rule.

The Third Edition, yet more fitted for the use of the lowest Form.

By SAMUEL HOADLY, Teacher of a private School in *Hackney*.

LONDON, Printed by *J. Heptinstall*, and are to be sold by *B. Aylmer*, at the Three Pigeons in *Cornhill*, 1694.

Core
X
674
.41

58-2589 OE

To my Beloved Charge,

Mr.

Thomas Cæsar	*Benjamin Moyer*
Thomas Barnard	*John Cook*
Joshua Smith	*John Cowden*
Samuel Philp	*John Bruce*
Richard Green	*John Adams.*

My dear Children,

I Have taken some pains to make this Book fitter yet for your Use, having considered your Years. It will be your parts to be *diligent*, and *dutifull*, that I may return you to your **Worthy Parents**, such as they hope and expect to find you, both **good Scholars**, and **good Men.** You are not yet able to conceive, how great a Pleasure that will afford both to your *Friends*, and to your *Master*. See that you fail us not, but let us have that Comfort of you, and Credit by you, that may reward our Care and Pains, which will never be wanting to do you good. That it may please **Almighty God** to bless and assist you, and to keep you in his Fear, and Love, that you may grow up to be usefull, and serviceable in the Church, and in the State, is the hearty Prayer of,

Your loving and carefull Master,

A S. H.

To my Beloved Charge,

Mr.

AN
Advertiſement.

I *Have againſt my own Inclination been prevailed upon, to put my Hand now this* third time *to accommodate this Book to the* deſire *of ſome that* teach *it, to the* uſe *of them that are to* learn *it, and to the* price *of them that muſt* ſell *it.*

It is not deſigned hereby to lay aſide the Common Grammar, *which, by thoſe that uſe this, ever has been conſcientiouſly taught, and ſhall be ſo, untill* Authority *ſhall pleaſe to* conſider its merits: *but rather to make the better way to a ſpeedy and uſefull progreſs in it with underſtanding and chearfulneſs, without the tediouſneſs of two or three lines at a Leſſon by a paltry Conſtruing-book, and thoſe not underſtood, nor applied to uſe. And hereby the firſt intention of the Accidence is recalled, which was by intelligible Engliſh Rules,* &c. *to prepare the Learner for the Latin Grammar, and the* Preface *to it ſuppoſes a* multitude of Exemples *to be given, and the Learner both able to turn Latin into Engliſh, and Engliſh into Latin before he be put into the other; it condemns the* paſſing haſte *that is too uſual, and affirming that* the variety of teaching it is, and always will be diverſe, *it gives ſuch directions about it as are here followed. And there Authority it ſelf not onely leaves each man to make his beſt uſe of the Accidence, but invites him to doe his beſt to make it gain its end.* It is not amiſs *(you reade there)* if one ſeeing by trial an eaſier and readier way than the common ſort of Teachers do, would ſay (i. e. *publiſh*) what he hath proved, and for the commodity allowed; that others not knowing the ſame might by experience prove the like; (*which is all I deſire*) and then by proof reaſonably judge the like, not hereby excluding the better way when it is found, but in the mean ſeaſon (*till that be done*) forbidding the worſe. *And therefore taking the* Accidence *for the* ground-work, *and keeping to the matter and words of it as far as could be; that which I have here endeavoured, is to find out the way to make it as uſefull, as it is capable of being, by giving light to what was dark, and perſpicuity to what was*

obſcure; by omitting what was needleſs, and deferring what was not yet fit to be taught; by limiting what was boundleſs, and rectifying what was falſe; but eſpecially by putting life and vigour into what is otherwiſe dead, by abundance of plain and eaſie exemples in both tongues adjuſted parallel to each other every where; and by reducing the whole into ſuch order and method, that every thing might be found in its proper place, and every operation done in its proper ſeaſon, the former making way for the latter, and both interchangeably giving and receiving light and ſtrength, ſo that no one motion might claſh and interfere with another, none anticipate another, nor unſeaſonably interpoſe it ſelf.

The *Errata* being but few and literal, are left to the Candour of the Maſter to mend.

THE

THE ACCIDENCE: OR, AN INTRODUCTION INTO THE Latin Tongue.

CHAPTER I.

Concerning the Latin Letters.

Question. HOW *many are the Letters used in the Latin Tongue?*

1. *Answer.* The Latin Letters are two and twenty.

The 22 Letters in Great Characters.

A B C D E F G H I *or* J L M N O P Q R S T U *or* V X Y Z.

The 22 Letters in Small Characters.

a b c d e f g h i *or* j l m n o p q r ſ *or* s t u *or* v x y z.

Q. *How are these twenty two Letters divided?*

2. *A.* Letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

Q. *What is a Vowel?*

3. *A.* A Vowel is a Letter which is a full and perfect sound of it self without a Consonant.

Q. *How many Letters be Vowels?*

4. *A.* Theſe ſix Letters a, e, i, o, u, y, are Vowels.

Q. *Are the ſix Vowels always pronounced with the ſame length?*

5. *A.* The ſix Vowels are ſometimes pronounced ſhort, and ſometimes long.

ſo *a* in	*mad* is ſhort *made* is long	*e* in	*met* is ſhort *mete* is long	*i* in	*fin* is ſhort *fiend* is long
ſo *o* in	*rob* is ſhort *robe* is long	*u* in	*cur* is ſhort *cure* is long	*y* in	*hypocrite* is ſhort *ſtyle* is long.

Q. *How may a Learner know when they are ſhort and when long?*

6. *A.* In this Book, where it is needfull,
The ſhort Vowel ſhall be marked thus (˘) as ŏs, vĭr, pĕr;
The long Vowel ſhall be marked thus (¯) as ōs, vēr, pār.

Q. *Is there then ſuch care to be taken about the length of the Vowels?*

7. *A.* Yes, a moſt exact care is to be taken,

1. That where-ever a Vowel is ſhort, it be ſtill pronounced ſhort, as milĕs, ĕquĕs, ĕs, ĕſt, *&c.* which you muſt not pronounce milēs, ēquēs, ēs, ēſt.

2. That where-ever a Vowel is long it be pronounced long, as ōs, mūs, mōs, honōs, jūs, amās, *&c.* which we muſt not pronounce ŏs, mŭs, mŏs, honŏs, jŭs, amăs.

Q. *Now try how you can pronounce the Vowels in theſe,* dŏcēs, ămārĕt, pătĕrĕ, păterĕ, părĕrĕ, pārĕrĕ, sūs, virtūs, cŭcūlŭs, vēsică, umbĭlicŭs, vēlōx, præcŏx, fēlix, fĭlix, făx, audāx, nĕx, rēx.

Q. *What is a Conſonant?*

8. *A.* A Conſonant is a Letter that is to be ſounded with a Vowel.

Q. *How many Conſonants are there?*

9. *A.* The other ſixteen Letters be Conſonants, b, c, d, *&c.*

Q. *Now tell me which of theſe be Vowels, and which Conſonants.*

e, f, g, a, l, m, o, n, r, i, p, s, t, u, y.

CHAP. II.

Of Syllables.

Q. *What is to be done with theſe Letters?*

10. *A.* The uſe of the Letters is to make Syllables.

Q. *How many Letters go to make a Syllable?*

11. *A.* I. Sometimes *one* Letter makes a Syllable; as, a, e, i, o, u, y.

II. Sometimes *two* Letters go to the making of a Syllable; as,

ab eb ib ob ub yb
ac ec ic oc uc yc

N. B. 1. Theſe Syllables, æ, œ, ai, ei, oi, au, eu, are called Diphthongs.

2. Inſtead of æ and œ we commonly pronounce e.

ba be bi bo bu by
ca ce ci co cu cy

III. Sometimes *three* Letters go to make a Syllable; as,

bab	beb	bib	bob	bub	byb	dad	ded	did	dod	dud	dyd
car	cet	cir	cor	cur	cyr	ras	res	ris	ros	rus	rys

IV. Some Syllables are made of *four* Letters; as, *part*, *pain*, *ſtar*, *font*, *quil*, *foul*, *ſoul*, *reſt*, *waſt*, *hart*, &c.

V. Some Syllables conſiſt of *five* Letters, as *mount*, *ſtain*, *bring*, *ſtand*, *ſtrip*, *ſtart*, *quart*, *print*.

VI. Sometimes there are *ſix* Letters in one Syllable, as *ſtript*, *ſtrong*, *ſought*, *fought*, *caught*, *fright*, *bright*, &c. *Sometimes 7 or 8 brought, ſtrength.*

Q. *Now tell me how many Letters are in each of theſe Syllables:* All Men love, and praiſe the Child, that minds his Book, and loves to learn.

CHAP. III.

Concerning Words.

Q. *What is to be done with the Syllables?*

12. *A.* The uſe of Syllables is to make Words.

Q. *How many Syllables go to make a Word?*

13. *A.* I. Sometimes *one* Syllable makes a Word, as *man*, *hat*, *can*, *ſtand*, *death*, *wiſe*, *fool*, *calf*, *horſe*, *aſs*.

II. Sometimes *two* Syllables go to make a Word, as *wo-man*, *fa-ther*, *me-ther*, *maſ-ter*, *ſo-ber*, *wiſ-dom*, *plen-ty*.

III. Sometimes *three* Syllables are in one Word, as *gra-ci-ous*, *god-li-neſs*, *pi-e-ty*, *ſo-ber-neſs*, *un-wor-thy*.

IV. Some Words are made of *four* Syllables, as *ſo-bri-e-ty*, *cor-rec-ti-on*, *peace-a-ble-neſs*, *cha-ri-ta-ble*, *un-mer-ci-full*.

V. Some Words conſiſt of *five* Syllables, as *ex-com-mu-ni-cate*, *par-ti-cu-lar-ly*, *ma-giſ-te-ri-al*.

VI. Sometimes *ſix* Syllables go to make a Word, as *pu-ri-fi-ca-ti-on*, *ſan-cti-fi-ca-ti-on*, *ju-ſti-fi-ca-ti-on*, &c.

Q. *In each of theſe Words following tell me how many Syllables are there:* Good Children will perpetually hearken to the inſtructions of their Parents, and will be obedient to the commands of their Maſters?

CHAP. IV.

Of the EIGHT PARTS *of Speech; or, of the eight ſorts of Words which Men uſe in ſpeaking.*

Q. *WHat are Words uſed for?*

14. *A.* Men uſe Words to expreſs and declare the thoughts of their mind, when they ſpeak: for we often need to ſignifie our thoughts to others, and they cannot know our thoughts but by our *Speech.*

Q. *What then is our Speech made up of?*

15. *A.* When we ſpeak to expreſs our thoughts, our Speech is made up of Words, and therefore Words are called *Parts of Speech.*

Q. *In our Speech how many Parts are there?*

16. *A. In Speech* be theſe eight Parts following.

1. *A Noun.*	5. *An Adverb.*
2. *A Pronoun.*	6. *A Conjunction.*
3. *A Verb.*	7. *A Prepoſition.*
4. *A Participle.*	8. *An Interjection.*

Q. *What mean you when you ſay there are* eight Parts of Speech?

17. *A.* I mean that there are *eight ſorts of Words,* which Men uſe when they ſpeak; for ſome words are *Nouns,* ſome are *Pronouns,* ſome are *Verbs,* others are *Participles,* others are *Adverbs,* other Words are *Conjunctions,* others *Prepoſitions,* and others are *Interjections.*

Q. *Are there no more ſorts of words uſed in ſpeaking?*

18. *A.* There are no other kind of Words uſed; for every Word which Men uſe in ſpeaking is either a *Noun,* or a *Pronoun,* or a *Verb,* or a *Participle,* or an *Adverb,* or a *Conjunction,* or a *Prepoſition,* or elſe an *Interjection.*

Q. *Do you not deſire to know which words are* Nouns, *and which are* Pronouns, *and which* Verbs, *&c?*

A. Yes, Sir, I would gladly know, if you pleaſe to teach me.

CHAP. V.

Of a Noun.

Q. *WHat is a* Noun?

19. *A.* A *Noun* is the Name of a thing that may be ſeen, felt, heard or underſtood; as,

The

The Name of this thing which here you ſee, in Engliſh is { *An Hand* / *An Houſe* / *A Man* } and in the Latin Tongue the Name of it is { Mănŭs. / Dŏmŭs. / Hŏmŏ. }

So this { *Man* / *Boy* / *Paper* } is called in Engliſh { *Good* / *Bad* / *Light* } and in Latin { Bŏnŭs. / Mălŭs. / Lĕvĭs. }

Q. *What words then are* Nouns?

20. *A.* All thoſe Words are *Nouns* that are the Names of things.

Q. *How many kinds of* Nouns *are there?*

21. *A.* There are two ſorts of *Nouns*; for of *Nouns* ſome be *Subſtantives*, and ſome be *Adjectives*.

Q. *What is a* Noun Subſtantive?

22. *A.* A *Noun Subſtantive* is that Name of a thing that can ſtand by it ſelf in a ſaying, and requireth not an *Adjective* to be joined to it to make ſence; as, *a Man* Homo, *a Maſter* Magiſter, *a Parent* Parens.

Q. *How can you make it appear that theſe are* Subſtantives?

23. *A.* Becauſe if one ſay, *I ſee a Man*, or *I ſee the Maſter*, or *I ſee a Parent*; in each ſaying the ſence is plain and full, and I underſtand its meaning without an *Adjective* added to it.

Q. *What is a* Noun Adjective?

24. *A.* A *Noun Adjective* is that Name of a thing that cannot ſtand by it ſelf in a Saying, but requireth a *Subſtantive* to which it may be joined to make ſence; as *good* bonus, *happy* felix, *white* albus.

Q. *Make it clear that theſe and ſuch like words cannot ſtand alone in a Saying?*

25. *A.* If any one ſay, *I ſee a good*, or *I ſee an happy*, or *I ſee a white*; in theſe Sayings there is no good ſence, nor do we underſtand the meaning of them, but there needs to be put in a *Subſtantive* to each *Adjective* to make ſence, as *I ſee a good Boy*, *I ſee an happy Man*, *I ſee a white Horſe*.

Q. *In theſe Sayings following tell me which* Nouns *are* Subſtantives, *and which are* Adjectives, *and the reaſon why?*

The Maſter ſent a *Letter*.	The Ape eats *Apples*.	That is a *mad*.
The Boy writes a *good*.	The Man builds an *Houſe*.	This is a *ſober*.
A wiſe learns his *Book*.	We love *ſweet*.	Horſes drink *Water*.

§ 1. A VOCABULARY:

Or, Exemples of Nouns Substantive, *mostly Primitive.*

N. B. Here follow the English and Latin Names of things most familiar to Children.

26. Every

Thing	Rēs ēi f.
hath its *name*	nōmĕn ĭnis n.
or *sign*	signŭm i n.

27. A Thing is

God	Dĕŭs i m.
the world	mundŭs i m.
or *a part* of it	pars tis f.
or *member*	membrum i n.

28. Besides which there is

nothing	nĭhĭlum i n.

29. Things in the World are

a spirit	spīrĭtŭs ūs m.
a body	corpŭs ŏris n.
a moving, live-creature	ănĭmăl ālis n.

30. All which things have their

cause	causa æ f.
nature	nātūra æ f.
fortune	fortūna æ f.
end	fĭnĭs is d.

31. The nature of things is in their

matter	mātĕrĭa æ f.
form	forma æ f.
mode	mŏdŭs i m.
and *kind*	gĕnŭs ĕris n.

32. To all things belong

time	tempŭs ŏris n.
place	lŏcus i m.
space	spătium i n.
order	ordo ĭnis m.
and *number*	nŭmĕrŭs i m.

33. Time is

an hour	hōra æ f.
a day	dĭēs ēi d.
a month	mensĭs is m.
a year	annŭs i m.
an age	sēcŭlum i n.

34. In a day is

the dawn	aurōra æ f.
the morning	māne n.
the evening	vespĕr -is m.
the night	nox ctis f.

35. The day after this is

to morrow	crās n.

36. In a Year are

the spring	vēr -is n.
the summer	æstās tis f.
autumn	autúmnŭs i m.
the winter	hĭĕms is f.

Of Spirits.

37. A Spirit is

an angel	ángĕlŭs i m.
a mind	mens tis f.
	or ănĭmŭs i m.
a soul	ănĭma æ f.
a devil	diábŏlŭs i m.

Of

Of Bodies.

38. The greater Bodies are

Heaven	Cœlŭm i n.
the skie	æthĕr ĕris m.
the air	āĕr ĕris m.
the earth	téllūs ūris f.
the water	ăqua æ f.

39. Bodies in the Skie are

the sun	sōl -is m.
the moon	lūna æ f.
a star	stella æ f.

40. From which come

a beam	jŭbăr -is n.
light	lūx cis f.
a fire	ignis is m.
a flame	flamma æ f.

41. When light is withheld there is made

a shadow	umbra æ f.
darkness	tĕnĕbræ ārum pl.f

42. By Fire are made

a fire-brand	torris is m.
a live coal	prūna æ f.
a dead coal	carbo ōnis m.
ashes	cĭnis ĕris, or cĭnĕr -is } m.

43. In the Air is

a steam	vapŏr ōris m.
a smoak	fūmŭs i m.
a cloud	nūbēs is f.
a wind	ventŭs i m.
a thunderbolt	fulmĕn ĭnis n.

Of Water.

44. Water is

a drop	gutta æ f.
a dew	rōs ris m.
a spring	fons tis m.
a river	rīvus i m. or amnis is m.
a lake	lācŭs ūs m.
a sea	măre is n.
the ocean	ōcĕănus i m.
a wave	unda æ f.

45. Frozen water is

ice	glăcĭēs ēi f.
snow	nĭx vis f.
hail	grando ĭnis f.

46. Of water is made

a bubble	bulla æ f.
a foam	spūma æ f.
a shower	imbĕr ris m.

Of Earth.

47. Earth is

land	terra æ f.
ground	hŭmŭs i f.
firm-ground	sŏlum i n. or fundŭs i m.
dust	pulvĭs or pulvĕr -is m.

48. Earth mixt with water is

dirt	cœnum i n.
mud	līmus i m.
clay	lūtum i n.

49. Land by the water ſide is

a brink	margo ĭnis d.
a bank	rīpa æ f.
a ſhore	lĭtus ŏris n.

50. Upon the Earth is

a plain field	campus i m.
a vale or *vally*	vallis is f.
a hill	collis is m.
a mountain	mons tis m.

51. Bodies growing of the Earth are

a mineral	mĭnĕra æ f.
a plant	planta æ f.

Of Minerals.

52. A Mineral is

ſalt	săl -is m.
alum	alūmĕn ĭnis n.
a metal	mĕtăllum i n.
a ſtone	lăpis ĭdis m.

53. Metals are

lead	plumbum i n.
iron	ferrum i n.
copper	æs ris n.
ſilver	argéntum i n.
gold	aurum i n.

54. A Stone is

ſand	ărēna æ f.
a big-ſtone	ſaxum i n.
a flint	sĭlĕx ĭcis d.
a pumice	pūmĕx ĭcis d.
a marble	marmŏr -is n.
a cryſtal	cryſtăllus i f.
a jewel	gemma æ f.

55. A Jewel is

a diamant	ădămas ntis m.
a ſapphire	ſapphīrus i f.
a ruby	rubīnus i m.

Of Plants.

56. A Plant is

an herb	herba æ f.
a ſhrub	frŭtex ĭcis m.
a tree	arbŏr -is f.

57. An Herb is

graſs	grāmĕn ĭnis n.
poppy	păpāvĕr -is n.
flax	līnum i n.
corn	frūx gis f.

58. Corn is

a bean	fāba æ f.
a pea	pīſum i n.
oat	āvēna æ f.
wheat	ădŏr -is n.

59. Of Corn

a ſtanding crop is	sĕgĕs tis f.

60. In Corn is

the ſtalk	caulis is m.
the ear	ſpīca æ f.
the grain	grānum i n.

Of Shrubs.

61. A Shrub is

a cane	canna æ f.
a reed	călămus i m.
	or ărúndo ĭnis f.
a roſe-buſh	rōſa æ f.
a vine	vītis is f.

Of

Of Trees.

62. A Tree is

an apple-tree	mālus i f.
a pear-tree	pyrus i f.
a cherry-tree	cĕrăsus i f
a fig-tree	fīcus ūs *or* i f.
a bay-tree	laurus ūs *or* i f.
a box-tree	buxus i f.
a cedar	cēdrus i f.
an oak	quercus ūs f.
a willow	sălīx cis f.

63. Trees growing together make

a wood	silva æ f.
a forest	nĕmus ŏris n.
a grove	lūcus i m.

64. The parts of Plants are

the root	rādīx cis f.
the stump	stirps is f.
the branch or *bough*	rāmus i m.
the wood	lignum i n.

65. In a Bough are

a fresh leaf	frons dis f.
a dead leaf	fŏlĭum i n.
a blossom or *flower*	flōs ris m.
the fruit	fructus ūs m.

Of Fruits.

66. Fruit is

a cucumber	cŭcŭmĕr -is m.
a melon	melō nis m.
a pome	pōmum i n.
a nut	nŭx cis f.
a berry	bacca æ f.

67. A Pome is

an apple	mālum i n.
a pear	pyrum i n.
a cherry	cĕrăsum i n.
a plum	prūnum i n.
a fig	fīcŭs ūs i f.

68. A Berry is

an olive	ŏlīva æ f.
a straw-berry	frāgum i n.
a grape	ūva æ f.

69. Plants arise from

seed	sēmen ĭnis n.

Of live-Creatures.

70. An Animal is

an insect	inséctum i n.
a worm	vermis is m.
a serpent	serpens tis m.
a fish	piscis is m.
a bird	ăvis is f.
a beast	béstĭa æ f.
a man	hŏmo ĭnis c.

71. In all which there is

life	vīta æ f.
sense	sensus ūs m.
sex	sexŭs ūs m.

72. Things perceived by sense are

sound	sŏnus i m.
or *voice*	vōx cis f.
colour	cŏlŏr ōris m.
tast or *relish*	săpŏr ōris m.
smell	ŏdŏr ōris m.
pain or *grief*	dŏlŏr ōris m.

73. By its Sex an Animal is

a male	mās ăris m.
or *a female*	fēmĭna æ f.

74 A

74. A **Female** brings forth

a *young one*	pullus i m.
or *elſe an egg*	ōvum i n.

Of Inſects.

75. An **Inſect** is

a *louſe*	pĕdĭcŭlus i m.
a *flea*	pūlex ĭcis d.
a *flie*	muſca æ f.
a *bee*	ăpis is f.
a *waſp*	veſpa æ f.
a *locuſt*	lŏcŭſta æ f.

Of Serpents.

76. A **Serpent** is

a *ſnake*	anguis is d.
a *dragon*	draco ōnis m.
a *viper* or *adder*	vīpĕra æ f.

Of Fiſhes.

77. **River-fiſhes** are

a *tench*	tinca æ f.
a *perch*	perca æ f.
a *trout*	trutta æ f.
ſalmon	ſalmo ōnis m.

78. **Sea-fiſhes** are

a *whale*	balæna æ f.
a *dolphin*	delphīn -is m.
an *herring*	hālēc -is f. n.
a *ſole*	sŏlea æ f.
an *oiſter*	óſtrĕa æ f.

Of Birds or Fowls.

79. Birds are

a *ſparrow*	paſſĕr -is m.
a *ſwallow*	hĭrúndo ĭnis f.
a *pigeon*	cŏlúmbus i m.
a *partridge*	perdix cis d.
a *raven*	corvus i m.
a *pheaſant*	phāſiānus i m.
a *turtle*	turtŭr -is m.
an *eagle*	ăquĭla æ f.
an *owl*	būbo ōnis m.

80. **Tame-fowls** are

a *cock*	gallus i m.
a *hen*	gallīna æ f.
a *capon*	căpo ōnis m.

81. **Water-fowls** are

a *gooſe*	anſĕr -is m.
a *duck*	ănăs tis f.
a *ſwan*	ŏlŏr ōris m.

82. **To Birds** belong

a *feather*	plūma æ f.
a *quill*	penna æ f.
a *wing*	āla æ f.

Of Beaſts.

83. **Beaſts** about the **houſe** are

a *dog*	cănis is c.
a *cat*	fēlis is f.
a *mouſe*	mūs ris m.

84. **Cattle** Pecŭs dis f.

is a *bull*	taurus i m.
a *cow*	vacca æ f.
a *calf*	vĭtŭlus i m.
a *ſheep*	ŏvĭs is f.
a *lamb*	agnŭs i m.
a *ſwine*	sūs ŭis c.
an *hog*	porcŭs i m.
a *goat*	căpĕr ri m.

85. A **Company** of theſe is

a *flock*	grĕx gis m.

86. Working cattle are

a bullock	bōs ŏvis c.
an horse	ĕqu*us* i m.
an ass	ăsĭn*us* i m.
a mule	mūl*us* i m.
a camel	cămēl*us* i m.
an elephant	ĕlĕpha*s* ntis m.

87. Wild-beasts are

a stag	cerv*us* i m.
a buck or doe	dām*a* æ d.
an hare	lĕpŭ*s* ŏris m.
a mole	talp*a* æ d.
a frog	rān*a* æ f.

88. Ravenous beasts are

a lion	lĕo ōnis m.
a bear	urs*us* i m.
a wolf	lŭp*us* i m.
a fox	vulpe*s* is f.

89. Beasts have

some an horn	corn*u* u n.
some a snout	rostr*um* i m.
some a tail	caud*a* æ f.

90. On Beasts is either

hair or *shag*	pīl*us* i m.
or *wool*	lān*a* æ f.
or *bristle*	sēt*a* æ f.

91. Hair is

a mane	jŭb*a* æ f.
a lock	cŏm*a* æ f.
a beard	barb*a* æ f.

The Parts of the Body, especially of Mans.

92. The Parts of the Body are

the head	căpŭt ĭtis n.
the trunk	trunc*us* i m
a limb	art*us* ūs m.

93. In the Head are

the crown	vertex ĭcis m.
the hair	crīn*is* is m.
	or căpill*us* i m.
the ear	aur*is* is f.
the face	făcĭ*es* ēi f.

94. In the Face are

the countenance	vultŭ*s* ūs m.
the forehead	fron*s* tis f.
the eye	ŏcŭl*us* i m.
the nose	nās*us* i m.
the mouth	ōs ris n.
the chin	ment*um* i n.

95. In the Eye is

a tear	lăcrym*a* æ f.

96. To the Mouth belong

the lip	lăbĭ*um* i n.
	or lăbr*um* i n.
the outer cheek	gĕn*a* æ f.

97. Within the Mouth are

the roof	pălāt*um* i n.
the inner cheek	bucc*a* æ f.
the tongue	lingu*a* æ f.
the gum	gingīv*a* æ f.
the chap	faux cis f.
the throat	guttŭr -is n.

98. Between the head and Trunck are

the neck	coll*um* i n.
the throttle	jŭgŭl*um* i n.
the crag	cervīx cis f.

99. In the Trunck of the body are

the fore-part	———
the back-part	terg*um* i n.

the

the side	lat*us* ĕris n.

100. In the fore-part are

the breſt	pect*us* ŏris n.
the belly	vent*er* ris m.
the dug	mamm*a* æ f.

101. In the back-part are

the ſhoulder	hŭmĕr*us* i m.
the mid-back	dorſ*um* i n.
the buttock	nāt*is* is f.

102. The Limbs are

the hand	măn*us* ūs f.
the foot / *the leg*	pēs ĕdis m.

103. Parts of the Hand are

the arm	brāchĭ*um* i n.
the fiſt	pugn*us* i m.
the palm	palm*a* æ f.
the thumb	poll*ex* ĭcis m.
a finger	dĭgĭt*us* i m.

104. Parts of the Foot are

the thigh	fĕmŭr ŏris n.
the knee	gĕnū u n.
the leg	crūs ris n.
the heel	calx cis d.

105. In all which parts are

skin	cŭt*is* is f.
fleſh	căr*o* nis f.
a bone	ŏs ſſis n.
humour	hūmŏr ōris m.
a vein	vēn*a* æ f.

106. The Inwards are

the brain	cĕrĕbr*um* i n.
the heart	cŏr -dis n.
the lungs or *lights*	pūlmo ōnis m.
the liver	jĕcŭr ŏris n.
the ſpleen	ſplēn -is m.
the paunch	alv*us* -i f.
the rein or *kidney*	rēn -is m.
the bladder	vēsīc*a* æ f.

The Bones.

107. The Bones are

the skull	crānĭ*um* i n.
the cheek-bone	māl*a* æ f.
a tooth	den*s* tis m.
a rib	coſt*a* æ f.
the ſhin-bone	tĭbĭ*a* æ f.
a nail or *claw*	ungu*is* is m.

The Humours.

108. Humours in the Body are

blood	ſangu*is* ĭnis m.
milk	lāc -tis n.
gall	fĕl lis n.

109. Excrements to be caſt forth of the body are

ſweat	sūdŏr ōris m.
ſpittle	sălīv*a* æ f.
matter	pūs ris n.
urine	ūrīn*a* æ f.
dung	ſterc*us* ŏris n.

Of the Affections and Diſeaſes.

110. Animals are affected with

deſire	desīdĕrĭ*um* i n.
hunger	fāme*s* is f.
thirſt	sĭt*is* is f.
love	ămŏr ōris m.
hatred	ŏdĭ*um* i n.
anger	īr*a* æ f.

joy

joy	gaúdĭum i n.
hope	ſpēs ĕi f.
fear	tĭmŏr ōris m.
or *dread*	mĕtŭs ūs m.

111. And they are ſubject to

a wound	vulnus ĕris n.
a diſeaſe	morbus i m.
death	mors tis f.

112. Diſeaſes are

a cough	tuſſis is f.
an ague or *fever*	febris is f.
the dropſie	hydrōps is m.

113. While Animals are free from diſeaſes they are in

health, welfare	sălūs tis f.
ſtrength	rōbŭr ŏris n.

114. For their maintenance there is

proviſion or *plenty*	cōpĭa æ f.
food or *meat*	cĭbŭs i m.
drink	pōtŭs ūs m.

Of Man, his age and kindred.

115. Man by his age is

a boy or *lad*	pŭĕr i m.
a girl or *laſs*	puella æ f.
a virgin	virgo ĭnis f.
a grown man	vĭr -i m.
a grown woman	mŭlĭĕr -is f.
an old woman	ănŭs ūs f.

116. A man by his kindred is

a father	păter ris m.
a mother	mātĕr ris f.
a ſon	fĭlĭus i m.
a daughter	fĭlĭa æ f.
a brother	frāter ris m.
a ſiſter	sŏrŏr ōris f.
a grand-father	ăvŭs i m.
a grandchild	nĕpōs tis m.
a father-in-law	sŏcĕr -i m.
a ſon-in-law	gĕnĕr -i m.

117. A man too big is

a giant	gĭgas ntis m.

A man too little is

a dwarf	pūmĭlĭo ōnis m.

Proper names.

118. Proper Names of men are

Adam	Adāmus i m.
Abraham	Abrahāmus i m.
Antony	Antōnĭus i m.
Benjamin	Benjamīnus i m.
Charles	Cārŏlus i m.
Chriſtopher	Chriſtŏphŏrus i m
Daniel	Dánĭēl -is m.
David	Dávĭd -is m.
Edward	Eduárdus i m.
Francis	Francíſcus i m.
George	Geórgĭus i m.
Henry	Henricus i m.
James	Jacōbus i m.
John	Joannes is m.
Luke	Lūcas æ m.
Mark	Marcus i m.
Matthew	Matthæus i m.
Paul	Paulus i m.
Peter	Pĕtrus i m.
Richard	Richárdus i m.
Robert	Robértus i m.
Samuel	Sámŭel -is m.
Thomas	Thōmas æ m.
William	Guiliélmus i m.

119. pro-

119. Proper Names of women are

Ann	Anna	æ f.
Barbara	Bárbăra	
Catharine	Cathărina	
Dorothy	Dorótheă	
Elizabeth	Elizabētha	
or *Betty*	*or* Elīza	
Eve	Eva	
Hannah	Hanna	
Jane	Jāna	
Joan	Joánna	
Martha	Mártha	
Mary	Marīa	
Rebecca	Rebécca	
Sarah	Sāra	
Suſan	Susánna	

Acts of the Creatures.

120. That theſe Creatures may act they have

a power or *force*	vīs is f.
help or *means*	ŏps is f.
aid	auxĭlĭum i n.

121. The uſual manner of acting is

cuſtom or *manner*	mōs ris m.

And the thing done by them is

a work	ŏpŭs ĕris n.

Acts of men.

122. Every Man hath his

buſineſs	nĕgōtĭum i n.
charge	mūnus ĕris n.
duty or *office*	offĭcĭum i n.

123. Man's duty lies in

labour	lăbŏr ōris m.
virtue	virtus tis f.
faithfulneſs	fĭdēs ĕi f.

124. He ſhould doe all with

counſel	conſĭlĭum i n.
art or *skill*	ars tis f.
care	cūra æ f.
ſtudy	ſtŭdĭum i n.
without *delay*	mŏra æ f.

125. That they may do their work there is propoſed to them.

a law	lēx gis f.
an example	exemplum i n.
a reward	præmĭum i n.
a puniſhment	pœna æ f.

126. The Law commands to allow to every thing its

right or *due*	jūs ris n.
worth or *price*	prĕtĭum i n.
honour	hŏnŏr ōris m.

127. Rewards are

praiſe	laus dis f.
glory	glōrĭa æ f.
gain	lŭcrum i n.
wages	mercēs dis f.
hire or *pay*	ſtĭps is f.

128. Puniſhments are

a ſtripe	verbĕr -is n.
death or *killing*	nĕx cis f.

129. In work ill done there is

a blemiſh	mendum i n.
a ſpot or *blot*	măcŭla æ f.
a faultineſs or *vice*	vĭtĭum i n.

130. A vict

130. A vicious act is

a fault	culp*a* æ f.
a crime	crīmĕn ĭnis n.
a villainy	ſcĕlŭs ĕris n.

131. A crime is

lewdneſs	lux*us* ūs m.
deceit or *a cheat*	dŏlŭs i m.
fraud	frau*s* dis f.

132. Perſons guilty of crimes are

a thief	fūr -is m.
a cut-throat	lătro ōnis m.
an adulterer	adúltĕr -i m.

The Works of Men.

133. For paſſage they make

a way	vĭ*a* æ f.
a path	call*is* is m.
a bridge	pon*s* tis m.
a boat	cymb*a* æ f.
a ſhip	nāv*is* is f.

134. For lightning they make

a torch	făx is f.
a lamp	lampăs dis f.
a candle	candēl*a* æ f.

135. Of Land they make

a court or *plat*	ārĕ*a* æ f.
a field	ăgĕr ri m.
a garden	hórtŭs i m.

136. Of Metals they make

money	numm*us* i m.
	or pĕcūnĭ*a* æ f.
a drinking cup	pōcŭl*um* i n.
a kettle	lēbēs tis m.

137. Of Flax or wool is made

a thread	fīl*um* i n.
a line	līnĕ*a* æ f.
a rope	fūn*is* is m.
a ſack	ſacc*us* i m.
a ſail or *veil*	vēl*um* i n.
cloth	pann*us* i m.

138. Of Wood they make

a ſtaff	ſcīpĭo ōnis m.
a board	tăbŭl*a* æ f.
a plank	planc*a* æ f.

139. For eating

the cook	coqu*us* i m.
makes *bread*	pān*is* is m.
butter	būtyr*um* i n.
cheeſe	cāsĕ*us* i m.
a banquet or *feaſt*	ĕpŭl*um* i n.

140. For drinking they make

broth or *pottage*	jūs ris n.
ale or *beer*	cerevĭſĭ*a* æ f
wine	vīn*um* i n.

141. Eating a meal is

a break-faſt	jentācŭl*um* i n
a dinner	prandĭ*um* i n.
a common ſupper	cœn*a* æ f.

142. For cloathing they make

an hat	gălēr*us* ī m.
a peruke	caliéndr*um* i n.
a garment	veſt*is* is f.

143. A garment is

a looſe coat	tūnĭc*a* æ f.
a cloak	pállĭ*um* i n.
a gown	tŏg*a* æ f.

144. An Handy-craft-man

namely { *a smith*, *a wright*, *a mason* } făbĕr ri m.

makes *a chariot*	currus ūs m.
arms	armă ōrum *pl.* n.
a vessel	vās sis n.
a building	ædes is f.
houshold-stuff	sŭpéllex ĕctĭlis f.
an instrument	instrūmĕntum i n.

145. To a Chariot belong

a pole	tēmo ōnis m.
an axel-tree	axis is m.
a wheel	rŏta æ f.

146. For the beasts are

a yoke	jŭgum i n.
a saddle	sella æ f.
a bridle	frœnum i n.

Arms.

147. Arms are

a weapon	tēlum i n.
a bow	arcŭs ūs m.
an arrow	săgitta æ f.
a gun	sclōpus i m.
a sword	ensis is m.
	or glădĭus i m.

Buildings.

148. Buildings are

a cote or *cottage*	căsa æ f.
an house	dŏmŭs ūs i f.
a palace	pălātĭum i n.
a fort or *castle*	arx cis f.
a tower	turris is f.

149. A building raised for worship is

an altar	altāre is n.
a temple or *church*	templum i n.

150. In a building is

the wall	părĭes ētis m.
the cellar	cella æ f.
the kitchin	cŭlina æ f.
the hall	aula æ f.
the chamber	cămĕra æ f.

151. To an House belong

a gate	jānŭa æ f.
a door	ostĭum i n.
a window	fĕnéstra æ f.

152. To a Gate belong

a post	postis is m.
an hinge	cardo ĭnis d.

153. Out-houses are

a stable	stăbŭlum i n.
a privy	fŏrĭca æ f.
a barn	hórrĕum i n.
a mill	mŏla æ f.

154. A company of houses are

a street or *row*	vĭcus i m.
a town or *city*	óppĭdum i n.
	or urbs is f.

155. To a Town belong

a gate or *port*	porta æ f.
a wall	mūrus i m.
a publick meeting place	fŏrum i n.

156. House and Land out of Town is

the country	rūs ris n.
a country farm or *village*	villa æ f.

Houshold-stuff

Houshold-stuff.

157. Houshold-stuff is

a spit	vĕrū u n.
a dish	discus i m.
a seat	sēdes is f.
a chair	căthĕdra æ f.
a table	mensa æ f.
a carpet	tăpēs tis m.
a napkin or *towel*	mappa æ f.
a bed	lectus i m.
a coffer or *trunk*	arca æ f.
tongs	forceps ĭpis d.
bellows	follis is m.

158. Instruments by which Men work are

a knife or *coulter*	cultĕr ri m.
a mallet or *beetle*	mállĕus i m.
a needle	ăcŭs ūs f.
a distaff	cŏlus i f.
a key	clāvis is f.

159. Instruments of Musick are

a drum	tympănum i n.
a pipe	tībĭa æ f.
a whistle or *flagellet*	fistŭla æ f.
a trumpet	tŭba æ f.
an harp	lyra æ f.
a fiddle	fīdes is f.

160. Instruments of striking are

a club	fustis is m.
a rod or *wand*	virga æ f.
a bat or *stick*	băcŭlus i m.

161. Tools of Husbandry are

an harrow or *rake*	rastrum i n.
a fork	furca æ f.
an hook	falx cis f.
a spade	lĭgo ōnis. m.

162. Instruments of catching are

a net	rēte is n.
an hay-net	cassis is m.
an hook	hāmus i m.

Recreation.

163. When work is over there is

leisure	ŏtĭum i n.
quiet	quĭēs tis f.
sleep	somnus i m.
play	lūdus i m.

Societies of Men.

164. Men join together into

a family	fămĭlia æ f.
a corporation	cīvĭtās tis f.
a kingdom	regnum i n.
a school	schŏla æ f.
a church	ecclēsĭa æ f.

165. In a Family are

a husband	vĭr -i m.
a wife	uxŏr ōris f.
the Lord or *Mr.*	Dŏmĭnus i m.
the Lady or *Dame*	Dŏmĭna æ f.
the Master	hĕrus i m.
the mistress	hĕra æ f.
a servitor	mĭnĭster ri m.

an hand-maid	ancílla æ f.

166. In a Corporation are

a citizen	cīvĭs is c. 2.
a magiſtrate	magiſtrātus ūs m.
a judge	jūdex ĭcis c. 2.

167. In a Kingdom is

the King	Rēx gis m.
the Queen	Regīna æ f.
the people	pŏpŭlus i m.

168. The King hath

a throne	thrŏnus i m.
a ſceptre	ſceptrum i n.
a crown	cŏrōna æ f.

169. The People are

the nobles	prŏcĕres um *pl.* m.
the commonalty	plēbs is f.
the rabble	vulgus i m & n.

170. A company of People is

a rout	turba æ f.
a tribe	trĭbŭs ūs f.
a nation	nātio ōnis f. *or* gens tis f.

171. In a School are

the maſter	măgíſter ri m.
the ſcholar	diſcīpŭlus i m.

172. Rulers in the Church are

Jeſus Chriſt	Jēſŭs u m. Chriſtus i m.
an Apoſtle	Apóſtŏlus i m.
a Biſhop	Epíſcŏpus i m.
a Prieſt or Elder	Présbyter i m.
a Deacon	Diăcŏnus i m.

Of War.

173. Betwixt Men there is

peace	pāx cis f.
or *ſtrife*	līs tis f.
a fight	pugna æ f.
a war	bellum i n.

174. To War are needfull

a leader	dŭx cis c. 2.
a ſoldier	mīlĕs ĭtis c. 2.
a guardian	cuſtōs dis c. 2.
an enemy	hoſtis is c. 2.
an army	exercĭtus ūs m.

Of computing.

175. The thing computed is

any whole eſtate foot, pound	aſſis *or* as
half of an As	ſemíſſis
one twelfth part of it, an inch or ounce	úncĭa

176. A heavy body is

a burthen	onŭs ĕris n.
a weight	pondŭs ĕris n.

Of Figures.

177. A round body is

a bowl or *globe*	glŏbus i m.
a ball	pĭla æ f.
an orb	orbis is m.

Of Signs.

178. A ſign of a thing is

an image	īmāgo ĭnis f.
an idol	īdōlum i n.

179. A ſign of a thought is

a ſpeech	ſermo ōnis m.

180. In a ſpeech are

a letter	litĕra æ f.
a ſyllable	ſyllăba æ f.
a word	verbum i n.

181. A ſpeech is

a tale or *fable*	fābŭla æ f.
a fame or *talk*	fāma æ f.
an hiſtory	hiſtŏria æ f.
a joke or *jeſt*	jŏcus i m.
a ſong	mūſa æ f.
a prayer	prĕx cis f.

182. A ſpeech writ down is

a letter or *epiſtle*	epiſtŏla æ f.
a book	lĭber ri m.
a bible	bĭblĭa ōrum *pl.* n.

183. For writing there is

a pen	penna æ f.
ink	sēpia æ f.
paper	păpyrus i f.
	or charta æ f.

184. Of Nouns Subſtantive you have heard

enough	sătis } und. a.
or *too much*	nimis } und. a.

§. 2. A VOCABULARY:

Or, Exemples of Nouns Adjective.

N. B. Here follow the moſt uſed *Adjectives*, which cannot ſtand alone in a ſentence, and therefore ſome of the *Subſtantives* are here ſet down again, and their *Adjectives* added to them.

185. Qu.

What a thing is't	Qualis is e.

A. The thing is

ſuch	tālis is e.
good	bŏnus a um.
bad	mălus a um.
comely, handſome	pulcher ra um
wonderfull	mirus a um.
pure	pūrus a um.
fit or *fitting*	aptus a um.
acceptable	grātus a um.
vain	vānus a um.
troubleſome	moléſtus a um.

186. As to it's value a thing is

worthy	dignus a um.
dear, high-prized	cārus a um.

cheap, low-prized vīl*is* is e.

187. As to neatneſs a thing is

clean mund*us* a um.
filthy turp*is* is e.
ure pūr*us* a um.
ſincere ſincēr*us* a um.

188. As to its ſtate it is

well, ſafe ſalv*us* a um.
proſperous proſpĕr -a um.
happy fēlīx c. 3.
wretched, miſerable mĭsĕr -a um.
whole tōt*us* a um.
or *torn* lăcer -a um.

189. A thing compared to another is

diverſe, various vărĭ*us* a um.
like sĭmĭl*is* is e.
or *unlike* diſsĭmĭl*is* is e.
æqual or *even* pār } c 3.
unæqual or *odd* impār }

190. As to its motions a thing is

gentle lēn*is* is e.
ſtrong, earneſt vehĕmens c. 3.
ſwift, quick cĕlĕr -is e.
ſlow, tardy tard*us* a um.

191. As to its weight it is

heavy, grievous grăv*is* is e.
light lĕv*is* is e.

192. As to the time of its continuance a thing is

new nŏv*us* a um.
old vĕtus c.
æternal ætern*us* a -um.

193. As to its ſeaſonableneſs it is

late, lag sērus a um.
ripe matūr*us* a um.
or *unripe* immatūr*us* a um.

194. As to its figure a thing is

ſtreight, right rect*us* a um.
crooked curvus a um.

195. To the Sight a thing is

white alb*us* a um.
black nĭgĕr ra um.
red rūbĕr ra um.
grey-haired, hoary cān*us* a um.

196. To the Taſt a thing is

ſweet dulc*is* is e.
bitter ămār*us* ra um.

197. To the Smell a thing is

ſweet-ſcented ſuāv*is* is e.
ſtinking tēter ra rum.

198. To the Touch a body is

plain plānus
even æquus
ſmooth lævis
or *rough, ſharp* aſper -a -um.

199. A thing dedicated to God is

ſacred, holy săcĕr ra rum.
others are *profane* prŏfānus

200. A ſign

200. A ſign of a thing is

true	vērus
or *falſe*	falſus
certain	certus
or *doubtfull*	dūbĭus

201. A Spirit is

good, gracious	pĭus
or *graceleſs*	impĭus

202. A Body is

ſtrong or *firm*	firmus
tender	tĕnĕr -a um.
hollow	căvus

203. Nature is

fruitfull	ūbĕr c. 3.
or *barren*	ſtĕrĭlis

204. The Months are 12.

January	Januārĭus
February	Februārĭus
March	Mártĭus
April	Aprīlis
May	Māĭus
June	Jūnĭus
July	Jūlĭus
Auguſt	Augúſtus
September	Septémber }
October	Octōber }
November	Novémber } riſe
December	Decémber }

205. A place is

full	plēnus
or *empty*	ināni s

206. As to its placing a thing is

right, on the right	dextĕr -a um.
or *left*	ſiniſtĕr -a um.

207. The

Air is	*clear, not cloudy*	sĕrēnus
Light	*clear* or *bright*	clārus
Shade	*dark* or *dull*	obſcūrus
Earth	*dry*	ſiccus
A Stone	*hard*	dūrus
Silk	*ſoft*	mollis

208. An Animal is

wakefull	vĭgĭl c.
alive	vīvus
or *dead*	mórtŭus
ſound, well	sānus
or *ſick, faint*	æger ra um.
fat	pinguis
or *lean*	măcĕr ra um.
brutiſh	brutus
wild	fĕrus

209. An animal by its power is

potent, able	pŏtis
knowing	gnārus
or *ignorant*	ignārus

210. For want of ſome powers an animal is

blind	cæcus
deaf	ſurdus
dumb	mūtus
lame or *halt*	claudus

211. As to action an animal is

dull, or *blockiſh*	hĕbĕs c.
briſk, chearfull	ălăcĕr ris re
or *ſlow, backward*	pĭgĕr ra um
ſmart	ācĕr ris re.
or *ſluggiſh, lazy*	ſegnis

212. After much action it is

weary	feſſus
tired	laſſus

A body without a covering is

naked, bare	nūdus

213. A Stomach is

hungry, faſting	jejūnus
or *full, ſatisfied*	sātŭr -a um.

214. A Man as to his underſtanding is

wiſe	săpĭens
or *unpoliſht, rude*	rŭdis
fooliſh	ſtultus

215. As to his diſpoſition he is

mild, meek	mītis
or *cruel, fierce*	ſævus
or *barbarous*	barbărus
chaſte, pure	caſtus
or *wanton*	laſcīvus
ſevere	ſevērus

216. As to his private manners he is

holy	ſanctus
ſober	sōbrĭus
or *drunken*	ēbrĭus
ſtout, valiant	fortis

217. In his carriage to others he is

juſt	juſtus
or *unjuſt*	injúſtus
friendly	amīcus
or *unfriendly*	ĭnimīcus

218. By his poſſeſſions a Man is

rich	dīvēs c.
or *poor*	paupĕr c.

219. As to his ſtate he is

free, a freeman	lībĕr -a um.
or *bond, enſlaved*	ſervus

220. As to his age he is

young	jŭvĕnis
old, an old perſon	sĕnex c.

221. As to ſociety a Man is

alone	sōlus
or *aſſociate*	sŏcĭus

222. A Man's countenance is

cheary, merry	hĭlăris
or *ſorrowfull*	mœſtus
blithe, kind	blandus
joyous	lætus
or *ſad*	triſtis

223. Goods are

owes own, proper	prŏprĭus
or *common*	commūnis
private	prĭvatus
or *publick*	públĭcus

224. Qu.

How big is it	quantus
A. *ſo big, ſo much*	tantus
great	magnus
little	parvus
big	grandis
or *ſmall, ſlender*	exĭlis

225. As to its meaſure a thing is

long	longus
or *ſhort*	brĕvis
broad	lātus
or *narrow*	anguſtus
ample, large	amplus
vaſt	vaſtus

high	altus
or *low*	hŭmĭlis

226. Qu.

how many	quŏt	*und*

A. Things are

ſo many	tŏt	*und.*
one	ūn*us* a um.	
two	dŭo æ -o.	
three	trēs -es -ia.	
four	quātŭor	*undeclined*
five	quinquĕ	
ſix	ſex	
ſeven	ſeptem	
eight	octo	
nine	nŏvĕm	
ten	dĕcĕm	
twenty	vīginti	
thirty	trīginta	
an hundred	centum	
a thouſand	mille	
both	ambo -æ -o.	

227. As to their number things are

many	mult*us* a um.
or *few*	pauc*us* a um.
all	omn*is* is e.
frequent	frĕquens c. 3.
or *ſeldom, rare*	rar*us* a um.

228. Qu.

of what number or *in what order* is it	quŏtus	
A. it is *firſt*	prīm*us*	a um
ſecond	sĕcund*us*	
third	tértĭ*us*	
fourth	quart*us*	
fifth	quint*us*	
ſixth	ſext*us*	
ſeventh	ſéptĭm*us*	
eight	octāv*us*	
ninth	nōn*us*	
tenth	dĕcĭm*us*	
the midlemoſt	mĕdĭ*us*	

229. Hereafter you ſhall learn

more	plūs ris
even *the reſt*	cæter -a -um

CHAP. VI.

Concerning a Pronoun.

Q. NOW *that you have learned the* Nouns, *both* Subſtantive *and* Adjective, *next tell me what is a* Pronoun?

230. *A.* A *Pronoun* is a word that may be uſed inſtead of any *Noun Subſtantive*; as,

Inſtead of my Name I ſay *I*, Ego.
Inſtead of thy Name I uſe *Thou*, Tu.

Inſtead of his Name I ſay *He*, Ille.

Q. *How many ſuch words be there that be* Pronouns?

231. *A.* There be fifteen *Pronouns*; ego, tu, ſui, ille, ipſe, iſte, hic, is, meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter, noſtras, *and* veſtras.

To which may be added theſe, quĭd, quĭs, cūjŭs, cūjās, ălĭus, īdem, ullŭs, nullus, qui, quidam, uter, neuter, alter.

Q. *Are theſe* Pronouns Subſtantive *or* Adjective?

232. *A.* Quid, ego, tu, and ſui, are *Pronouns Subſtantive*, all the reſt are *Pronouns Adjective*.

The Pronouns.

233. Q. *What* is it	quĭd n.
who? or *which* is it	quĭs
An. It is *I*	ĕgo
thou	tū
himſelf	ſui
that	illĕ
or	ĭs
or	iſtĕ
ones ſelf	ipsĕ
this	hic
the ſame	īdem
another	alius
ſome one	quidam
any one	ullus
no one or *none*	nullus
that, which, who	quī
234. Q. *which* or *whether* of the two	ŭtĕr
A. *either* or one of the two	altĕr
neither of the two	neutĕr
235. Q. *Who's* is it	cūjŭs
A. it is *mine*	mĕŭs
thine	tŭŭs
his own	sŭŭs
ours	nōstĕr
yours	vēstĕr
their own	sŭŭs
236. Q. *Of what tribe is he?*	cūjās
A. of our tribe	nōstrās
of your tribe	vēstrās.

CHAP. VII.

Of a Verb.

Q. *Thus you have ſeen the* Nouns *and the* Pronouns, *now tell me what is a* Verb?

237. *A.* A *Verb* is a part of ſpeech that betokeneth to Be, to Do, or to Suffer. *That is* to be done to.

Q. *Which*

Q. *Which words then are* Verbs?

238. *A.* All thoſe words are *Verbs*, which betoken either to Be, or to Do, or to Suffer, *i*, *e*. to be done to, or acted upon.

Q. *How many ſorts of* Verbs *are there*?

239. *A.* There are three ſorts of *Verbs*?

I. Some betoken *to Be* as eſſe *to be*, fĭĕri *to become*, călēre, *to be hot*, and ſuch are called *Verbs Neuter*.

II. Some betoken *to Do*, as ămāre *to love*, ăgĕre *to act*, audīre *to hear*; and theſe are called *Verbs Active*.

III, Some betoken *to be done*, or *to be acted upon*, as ămāri, *to be loved*, ăgī *to be done*, audīri *to be heard*; and theſe are called *Verbs Paſſive*.

240. N. B. *All* Verbs (*except* eſſe) *have their firſt ending either*,

1. *In* āre *or* āri } { 3. *In* ĕre *or* ĭ
2. *In* ēre *or* ēri } { 4. *In* īre *or* īri.

A Vocabulary of *Verbs*, eſpecially Primitive.

§. 1. *Exemples of* Verbs Neuter.

241. A Verb Neuter betokens

to be	eſſe

242. That which is uſes

to become	fiĕri
to grow	créſcĕre
to continue or *abide*	mănēre

243. Where nothing is, the thing uſes

to be empty	văcāre
to want or *be without*	cărēre
to want or *need*	ăgēre

244. Things good or bad uſe

to be pleaſing, to pleaſe	plăcēre
to be harmfull, to harm	nŏcēre
to be painfull, to pain	dŏlēre

245. As to their ſtate things uſe

to be able	poſſe
to be well or *ſtrong*	vălēre
to pine or *languiſh*	languēre

246. As to its poſture it uſes

to lie along	jăcēre
to hang	pendēre
to ſtick or *cleave to*	hærēre

247. To the ſenſes things uſe

to lie fair, to appear	pārēre

to be open or *plain*	pătēre
to lie hid, to lurk	lătēre

248. To the Touch they appear

to be cold	frigēre
to be warm	tĕpēre
to be hot	călēre
to be clear	lĭquēre

249. To the Ear they appear

to be silent	sĭlēre

250. That they act so or so uses

to be allowed	lĭcēre
to like them	lĭbēre

§. 2. *Exemples of* Verbs Active.

251. A Verb Active signifies

to act, or *to do*	ăgĕre

252. That which acts ought

to begin to act	cœpisse
to begin a work	ordīri
to carry on	gĕrĕre
to finish or *end*	finīre
to make or *do*	făcĕre

253. To make is

to create	crĕāre
to frame or *fashion*	fingĕre
to form	formāre

254. To act is

to move	mŏvēre
to urge	urgēre
to put	pōnĕre
to manage or *rule*	rĕgĕre
to bend	flectĕre
to stretch	tendĕre
to chang	mūtāre
to let, to let alone	sĭnĕre
to leave, to forsake	linquĕre
to bear	fer're
to endure or *suffer*	pāti
to have	hăbēre
to cover	tĕgĕre

255. To move a thing is

to stir or *raise* it	cĭēre
to shake it	quătĕre
to turn it	vértĕre

256. To move it forward is

to lead it	dūcĕre
to thrust it	trūdĕre
to drive it	péllĕre
to rowl it	vólvĕre
to send or *fling* it	míttĕre
to cast or *throw* it	jăcĕre
to draw it	trăhĕre
to carry it	vĕhĕre

257. The thing moving is said

to go	īre
to come	vĕnīre
to follow	sĕqui
to give way, or *go off*	cēdĕre
to flee	fŭgĕre
to stray or *rove*	errāre
to leap or *jump*	sălīre

258. What

258. What is not fast uſes

to tremble	trĕmĕre
to fall	cădĕre
to ruſh or *tumble*	ruĕre

259. To change a thing is

to increaſe it	augēre
to fill it	plēre
to adorn it	ornāre
to paint	pingĕre

260. To have a thing is

to take or *contain* it	căpĕre
to hold it *faſt*	tĕnēre
to keep or *ſave*	ſervāre

261. Good things uſe

to nouriſh	ălĕre
to cheriſh	fŏvēre
to bleſs, or *make happy*	bĕāre
to help	jŭvāre

262. Evil things uſe

to hurt or *harm*	lædĕre
to affright	terrēre
to trouble or *diſturb*	turbāre

263. Lightſome bodies uſe

to ariſe	ŏrīri
to ſhine	lūcēre
to glitter or *twinkle*	mĭcāre

Acts of Lifeleſs things.

264. Fire uſeth

to burn or *be kindled*	ardēre
to burn or *ſcorch*	ūrĕre
to toſt or *roaſt*	torrēre

265. Water uſes

to flow	flŭĕre
to boil up	fervēre
to rain	pluĕre

The Acts of Animals.

266. Animals are wont

to be born	naſci
to live	vīvĕre
to ſenſe or *feel*	ſentīre
to remove or *flit*	mīgrāre

267. Their life impowers them

to be able	quīre
to dare or *venture*	audēre
to try	ex-pĕrīri
to ſtudy or *labour*	ſtŭdēre
to ſeek after	pĕtĕre
to beware of	căvēre
to get or *obtain*	pŏtīri
to uſe or *make uſe of*	ūti
to enjoy	frŭi

268. That they may live they uſe

to eat	ĕdĕre
to drink	bĭbĕre
to ſwallow	vŏrāre
to play or *ſport*	lūdēre
to ſleep	dormīre

269. To ſenſe or perceive by ſenſe is

to ſee a thing	vĭdēre
to hear it	audīre
to ſmell it	ŏdōrāri

to

to taſt it — gustāre
to touch it — tangĕre

270. That things may be ſenſed they ought

to ſound — sŏnāre
to taſt of or *ſavour* — săpĕre
to ſmell or *caſt a ſmell* — ŏlĕre

271. To ſound is

to make a noiſe — strĕpĕre
to crake — strīdĕre
to crack, give a crack — crĕpāre
to roar — frĕmĕre
to thunder — tŏnāre

272. When they remove they uſe

to ſtep or *go* — grădi
to walk — ambŭlāre
to go a foot pace — vădĕre
to run — currĕre
to ſwim — nāre
to flie — vŏlāre

273. When they do not go they uſe

to ſtand — stāre
to ſit — sĕdēre
to lie down — cŭbāre
or cumbĕre

274. Animals when oppreſſed uſe to eaſe themſelves, that is

to break wind — pēdĕre
to ſpit or *ſpue* — spŭĕre
to vomit — vŏmĕre
to make water — meiĕre
to dung — căcāre

275. When ill they uſe

to weep — flēre
to mourn — lūgēre
to complain — quĕri
to die — mŏri

276. Their young ones they uſe

to get or *beget* — gĕnĕre *or* gignĕre
to bear or *bring forth* — părĕre
to nurſe — nūtrīre

277. Live things they uſe

to hunt — vēnāri
to ſtrangle — strangŭlāre
to kill — nĕcāre

Acts of their members.

278. With their Limbs they uſe

to climb — scandĕre
to fight — pugnāre
to ſtrike againſt — of-fendĕre
to crop — carpĕre
to pluck — vellĕre

279. With their head they uſe

to nod — nŭĕre

280. With their eyes they uſe

to ſpie — spĕcĕre
to ken or *diſcern* — cernĕre
to behold or *look to* — tŭēri

281. With their mouth they uſe

to breath	ſpīrāre

282. With their voice they uſe

to cry out	clāmāre
to groan	gĕmĕre
to ſing	cănĕre
to mutter	mūtīre
to howl	ŭlŭlāre

283. Particularly

an horſe uſes *to neigh*	hinnīre
an aſs *to bray*	rūdĕre
a bullock *to low*	mūgīre
a lion *to roar*	rūgīre
an hog *to grunt*	grunnīre
a dog *to bark*	latrāre
a ſheep *to bleat*	bālāre

284. With their tongue they uſe

to lick	lingĕre
to lap	lambĕre
to ſuck	sūgĕre

285. With the teeth they uſe

to champ or *chew*	mandĕre
to gnaw	rōdĕre
to bite	mordĕre

286. With their nails or claws they are able

to claw	ſcābĕre
to ſcratch	ſcalpere
to rub or *wear away*	tĕrĕre

The Acts of Men.

287. A Man is able

to know or *underſtand*	ſcīre
to remember	mĕmĭnīſſe
to will	velle

288. That he may underſtand he ought

to conſider	consīdĕrāre
to meditate	mĕdĭtāri
to know or *take knowledge of*	noſcĕre
to weigh	pendĕre

289. It's the act of his judgment

to judge	jūdĭcāre
to approve or *like*	prŏbāre
to eſteem or *prize*	æſtĭmāre
to condemn	damnāre
to think	pŭtāre
to believe	crēdĕre
to truſt	fidĕre

290. What they prize they uſe

to love	ămāre
to wiſh for	optāre
to hope	ſpērāre
to deſire or *covet*	cŭpĕre
to ſeek	quærĕre
to favour	favēre
to joy or *rejoyce in*	gaudēre
to wonder or *admire*	mīrāri

291. What they diſlike they uſe

to hate	ōdiſſe

to contemn or *despise*	témnĕre
to scorn	spernĕre
to fear, or *dread*	tīmēre
or	mĕtŭĕre

The Duty of Man.

292. It's the duty of Man

duely to regard	cŏlĕre
to consult	constŭlĕre
to care	cūrāre
to make ready, prepare	părāre
to serve or *deserve*	mĕrēri

293. When a Man does not his duty he is said

to fail or *deceive*	fallĕre
to sin	peccāre

294. To do well uses

to become one	dĕcēre

The Acts of our Members.

295. With our mouths we use

to laugh	rīdēre
to talk	lŏqui
to prate	garrīre
to hold our peace	tăcēre

296. By our speech we use

to ask	rŏgāre
to tell	narrāre
to confess	fătēri
to say	dīcĕre
or *to affirm*	*or* aiĕre
to deny	nĕgāre

297. The particular uses of speech are

to swear	jūrāre
to vow	vŏvēre
to admonish	mŏnēre
to advise	suādēre
to call for or *require*	poscĕre
to bid or *command*	jŭbēre
to bid or *invite*	invītāre
to forbid	vĕtāre
to call	vŏcāre
to pray	prĕcāri
to beseech	ōrāre
to promise or *engage*	spondēre
to praise	laudāre

298. With our hands we use

to give	dăre
to take	sūmĕre
to snatch	răpĕre
to lift or *take up*	tollĕre
to carry	portāre
to lay hold of, to snatch	prendĕre

Their acts about several things.

299. If there be diverse things they are able

to number them	nŭmĕrāre
to gather or *chuse*	lĕgĕre
to mix or *mingle*	miscēre
to join	jungĕre
to scatter	spargĕre
to divide	dīvidĕre
to distribute or *give out*	trĭbuĕre

300. That which is

open	they use to	*shut* claudĕre
shut		*to fling open* pandĕre
hid		*to shew* monstrāre

301. That which withstands them they are able

to strike	īcĕre
to beat or *overcome*	vincĕre
to tame or *subdue*	dŏmāre
to spare	parcĕre

302. Water Men are wont

to draw	haurīre
to pour or *pour out*	fundĕre
and in it *to wash*	lăvāre

303. Animals Men use

to feed	pascĕre
to milk	mulgēre
to clip or *shear*	tondēre

304. Men employed use

to sell	vendĕre
to buy	ĕmĕre
to owe	dēbēre
to build	strŭĕre
to dress or *cook*	cŏquĕre

305. VVhen Men eat a meal they are said to

to break-fast	jentāre
to dine	prandēre
to sup	cœnāre

Mens acts by instruments

306. VVith an instrument Men are able

to thump or *knock*	tundĕre
to break	frangĕre
to burst	rumpĕre
to press or *squeez*	prĕmĕre
to defend	de-fendĕre

307. VVith a sharp instrument they use

to cut	sĕcāre
to slash	scindĕre
to cleave	findĕre
to smite or *to hack*	cædĕre
to prick	pungĕre
to write	scrībĕre

308. VVith a cleansing instrument they use

to sweep or *brush*	verrĕre
to purge or *cleanse*	purgāre
to rub out	delēre
to polish	pŏlīre

309. VVith a Band they are able

to bind	vincīre
to gird	cingĕre
to hoop	vĭēre

And then they use

to loose or *loosen*	solvĕre

The acts of some particular states of Men.

310. It's the act of a Ruler

to reign	regnāre
to govern	gŭbernāre
to establish a law	sancīre
to punish	pūnīre

311. Its

311. It's the duty of the ruled

to obey	obēdīre
to fear, stand in awe	vĕrēri

312. It's the work of

some *to teach*	docēre
to learn	discĕre
to imitate	ĭmĭtāri
others *to heal* or *cure*	mĕdēri
to sew	sŭĕre
to knit	nēre
to grind	mŏlĕre
some *to dig*	fŏdĕre
to plow	ărāre
to plant	plantāre

313. It's the work of the Dresser

to comb	pectĕre
to trim up	cōmĕre
to cloath or *array*	ămĭcīre
to put on	indŭĕre
to put off	exŭĕre

314. That which acts oft is said

to use or *be accustomed*	suēre
to use or *to wont*	sŏlēre
to exercise	exercēre

§ 3. *Of* Verbs Passive.

Q. *Thus you have seen Verbs* Neuter *and Verbs* Active, *now proceed to tell me how are Verbs* Passive *made?*

315. *A.* A Verb passive is formed from the *Active* by changing.

1. āre *into* āri *as*
   - amāre *to love*, amāri *to be loved.*
   - creare *to create*, creari *to be created.*
   - mutare *to change*, mutari *to be changed.*
2. ēre *into* ēri, *as*
   - docēre *to teach*, docēri *to be taught.*
   - habere *to have*, haberi *to be had.*
   - tenere *to hold*, teneri *to be held.*
3. ĕre *into* i, *as*
   - lĕgĕre *to read*, legi *to be read.*
   - emĕre *to buy*, emi *to be bought.*
   - agere *to doe*, agi *to be done.*

N. B. *But* ferre *to bear, hath* ferri *to be born, and* facere *to doe hath* fieri *to be done.*

4. īre *into* īri, *as*
   - audire *to hear*, audiri *to be heard.*
   - punire *to punish*, puniri *to be punished.*
   - finire *to finish*, finiri *to be finished.*

N. B. *Thus of Actives in* re *are made Passives in* i.

Now

Now tell me the Paſſives of theſe Verbs Actives following,

laudare	flēre	dēbēre	mŏvēre	ărare
ſumĕre	haurire	nūtrire	răpĕre	frangĕre
ſuadēre	purgare	ſentire	cēdĕre	mordēre, &c.

§. 4. *Of* Verbs Common.

Q. *Is there no more to be known about Verbs?*

316. *A.* Yes, there are yet *three* things to be known about Verbs.

Q. *Which is the firſt thing?*

317. *A.* I. Some Verbs in *i* ſignifie both to *act* and to *be acted upon*, and ſo are both *Active* and *Paſſive*, and are therefore called Verbs Common; *as*,

ſolari { *to comfort*, and *to be comforted* } | hortari { *to exhort*, and *to be exhorted* } | metiri { *to meaſure*, and *to be meaſured.*

§. 5. *Of* Verbs Deponent.

Q. *Which is the ſecond thing, yet to be known?*

318. *A.* II. Moſt of the *Common* now ſignifie onely *Actively*, having *laid aſide* the *Paſſive* ſignification, and are therefore called Verbs Deponent.

Q. *What then is a Verb Deponent?*

319. *A.* A *Verb Deponent* is that which ends in *r*, as a *Common*, but ſignifies onely Actively *to Doe*; ſo,

1. *In* āri, *as* fari, *to ſpeak*, meditari *to muſe*, venari *to hunt*, &c.
2. *In* ēri, *as* verēri *to fear*, tuēri *to look to*, medēri *to heal*, &c.
3. *In* i, *as* pati *to ſuffer*, gradi *to ſtep*, mori *to die*, &c.
4. *In* īri, *as* mentiri *to lye*, ordiri *to begin*, experiri *to try*, &c.

Q. *Now tell me which of theſe Verbs are* Paſſive, *which* Commons *and which* Deponent?

ŏriri *to raiſe*, rumpi *to be burſt*, terreri *to be affrighted*, | ūti *to uſe*, hauriri *to be drawn*, venari *to hunt*, | oſcŭlari { *to kiſs*, *to be kiſſed*, } frui *to enjoy.*

§. 6. *Of Verbs ſignifying perfectly* to have been, to have done, to have been done.

Q. *Which is the third thing to be farther known?*

320. *A.* III. That all the Verbs you have hitherto heard of, ſignifie *Imperfectly to be, to doe,* or *to be done*; but they muſt be turned into another ending to make them ſignifie *Perfectly to have been, to have done, to have been done.*

N. B. *Where obſerve that in every Verb you muſt exactly know,*

1. *The Infinite Imperfect.*
2. *The Infinite Perfect.*
3. *The Supine, of which you ſhall hear more in the next Chapter.*

Q. *Why are theſe three to be ſo exactly known in the firſt place?*

321. *A.* Becauſe theſe three are the principal endings of Verbs, and from theſe all the reſt are formed, as you ſhall ſee hereafter.

Q. *Tell me then how ſhall I know theſe three endings in every Verb?*

322. *A.* The Imperfect you have heard already, the Perfect and the Supine are formed from that Imperfect by theſe five Rules.

§ I. Verbs in *āre* made perfect.

R. I. āre in the Imperfect is changed into āviſſe in the Perfect, and ātum in the Supine; as,

creāre *to create*	creāviſſe *to have created*	creātum *to create*
formare *to form*	formaviſſe *to have formed*	formatum *to form*
laudare *to praiſe*	laudaviſſe *to have praiſed*	laudatum *to praiſe*

So form mūtare, errare, arare, putare, ornare, and the reſt in āre.

Q. *Are all in* āre *ſo formed?*

323. *A.* No, for
Dăre *to give*, makes dĕdiſſe *to have given*, dătum *to give*; and
ſtāre *to ſtand*, makes ſtĕtiſſe *to have ſtood*, ſtatum *to ſtand.*

§. II. Verbs in *ēre.*

Q. *Which is the ſecond Rule?*

324. *A.* R. II. Theſe Verbs in ēre are formed by changing ēre in the Imperfect into ēviſſe in the Perfect, and ētum in the Supine; as,

flēre *to weep*	flēviſſe *to have wept*	flētum *to weep*
nere *to ſpin*	neviſſe *to have ſpun*	netum *to ſpin*
plere *to fill*	pleviſſe *to have filled*	pletum *to fill*

delere

delere *to blot out*	deleviſſe *to have blotted out*	deletum *to blot out*
viĕre *to bind*	vieviſſe *to have bound*	vietum *to bind*
ſuĕre *to uſe*	ſueviſſe *to have uſed*	ſuetum *to uſe*

Q. *Which is the third Rule?*

325. *A.* R. III. Other Verbs in ēre change ēre in the Imperfect into ūiſſe in the Perfect, and ĭtum in the Supine; as,

ciēre *to ſtir*	civiſſe *to have ſtirred*	citum *to ſtir*
ſtudēre *to ſtudy*	ſtudūiſſe *to have ſtudied*	ſtudĭtum *to ſtudy*
habēre *to have*	hăbūiſſe *to have had*	habĭtum *to have*

So form calēre, monēre, debēre, valēre, dŏlēre, and the reſt in ēre.

N. B. *But ſome have the ſhort* i *of the Supine caſt away*; *as*,
tenēre *to hold*, tenuiſſe, ten'tum *for* tenĭtum,
docēre *to teach*, docuiſſe, doc'tum *for* docĭtum,
miſcēre *to mingle*, miſcuiſſe, miſtum *or* mixtum *for* miſcĭtum,
but torrēre, torruiſſe, toſtum.

Q. *Are all in* ēre *ſo formed?*

326. *A.* No, for there are four Exceptions.

Except. 1. In ſome the *u* is left out, ſo that they have not *uiſſe* but *iſſe*; as,

vĭdēre	vīdiſſe	vīſum	făvēre	fāviſſe	fautum
sĕdēre	sēdiſſe	seſſum	fŏvēre	fōviſſe	fōtum
prandēre	prandiſſe	pranſum	mŏvēre	mōviſſe	mōtum
ſtridēre	ſtridiſſe	———	vŏvēre	vōviſſe	vōtum
căvēre	cāviſſe	cautum	fervēre	ferviſſe	———

327. Except. 2. In four of theſe the firſt Letter is doubled with a Vowel; as,

pendēre	pĕpendiſſe	penſum	tondēre	tŏtondiſſe	tonſum
mordēre	mŏmordiſſe	morſum	ſpondere	ſpŏſpondiſſe	ſponſum

328. Except. 3. Some take in an *s* before *iſſe*, and ſo make *ſiſſe*; as,

mănēre	manſiſſe	manſum	mulgēre	mulxiſſe	mulctum
jŭbēre	juſſiſſe	juſſum	frīgēre	frixiſſe	———
augēre	auxiſſe	auctum	lūcēre	luxiſſe	———
lūgēre	luxiſſe	luctum			

329. Except. 4. Of theſe in *ſiſſe* ſome caſt off the Letter before *ſiſſe*; as,

rīdēre	rīſiſſe	rīſum	audēre	———	auſum
ſuādēre	ſuāſiſſe	ſuāſum	urgēre	urſiſſe	———
ardēre	arſiſſe	arſum	hærēre	hæſiſſe	hæſum

§. III. Verbs in *ĕre*.

Q. *Which is the fourth Rule for the Perfect and Supine?*

330. *A.* R. IV. Verbs in ĕre make the Perfect and Supine by changing ĕre in the Imperfect into uiſſe in the Perfect, and ĭtum in the Supine; as,

ălĕre *to nouriſh* ălŭiſſe *to have nouriſhed* ălĭtum *to nouriſh*
mŏlĕre *to grind* mŏlŭiſſe *to have ground* mŏlĭtum *to grind*

frĕmĕre	frĕmŭiſſe	frĕmĭtum
gĕmĕre	gĕmŭiſſe	gĕmĭtum
vŏmĕre	vomŭiſſe	vŏmĭtum
cŏlĕre	cŏlŭiſſe	cultum
conſŭlĕre	conſŭlŭiſſe	conſultum
răpĕre	răpŭiſſe	raptum

and velle	(*for* volere)	voluiſſe—
gĕnĕre, *old*, *new* gignĕre	gĕnŭiſſe	genitum
ſtrĕpĕre	ſtrĕpŭiſſe	ſtrĕpĭtum
săpĕre	săpŭiſſe	——

Q. *Are all in* ĕre *formed* ŭiſſe, ĭtum?

331. *A.* No, there are eleven Exceptions.

Except. 1. Some caſt away a Letter before *uiſſe*; as,

sĭnĕre	ſiviſſe	sĭtum
pŏnĕre	pŏsŭiſſe	pŏsĭtum

332. Except. 2. Some take a long ī before uiſſe, and have ītum long; as,

pĕtĕre	pĕtīviſſe	pĕtītum
cŭpĕre	cupīviſſe	cŭpītum
quærĕre	quæsīviſſe	quæsītum
tĕrĕre	t'rīviſſe	t'rītum

333. Except. 3. The reſt in *ĕre* caſt off the *n*, and make *iſſe*; as,

bibĕre	bĭbiſſe	bĭbĭtum
ſcăbĕre	ſcăbiſſe	——
īcĕre	īciſſe	ictum
ĕdĕre	ēdiſſe	ēſum, eſtum
pandere	pandiſſe	panſum & paſſum
mandere	mandiſſe	manſum
ſcandere	ſcandiſſe	ſcanſum
de-, of- fendere	fendiſſe	fenſum
prendĕre	prendiſſe	prenſum
fŏdere	fŏdiſſe	foſſum
rūdĕre	rūdiſſe	——
lĕgĕre	lēgiſſe	lectum
fŭgĕre	fŭgiſſe	fŭgĭtum
vellĕre	velliſſe & vulſiſſe	vulſum

cœpĕre	cœpiſſe	cœptum
ĕmĕre	ēmiſſe	emptum
verrĕre	verriſſe	verſum
vertĕre	vertiſſe	verſum
trĭbŭĕre	trĭbŭiſſe	tribūtum
indŭĕre	induiſſe	indūtum
exŭĕre	exuiſſe	exūtum
plŭĕre	plŭiſſe	——
nŭĕre	nŭiſſe	nūtum
ſpŭĕre	ſpŭiſſe	ſpūtum
rŭĕre	ruiſſe	ruĭtum
mĕtŭĕre	metuiſſe	——
ſuĕre	sŭiſſe	sūtum
ſolvere	ſolviſſe	ſolūtum
volvere	volviſſe	volūtum

334. Except. 4. Some of theſe in *iſſe* loſe a Letter; as,

vincĕre	vīciſſe	victum
ſcindere	ſcĭdiſſe	ſciſſum
findere	fĭdiſſe	fiſſum
fundĕre	fūdiſſe	fuſum
linquĕre	līquiſſe	lictum
rumpere	rūpiſſe	ruptum

335. Except. 5. And ſome in *iſſe* change a Letter; as,

făcere	fēciſſe	factum
jăcĕre	jēciſſe	jactum
ăgĕre	ēgiſſe	actum
frangĕre	frēgiſſe	fractum
căpĕre	cēpiſſe	captum

336. Except.

336. Except. 6. Some double in the Perfect; as,

diſcĕre	dĭdĭciſſe	——	tendĕre	tĕtendiſſe	tenſum
poſcĕre	pŏpoſciſſe	——	tundĕre	tŭtŭdiſſe	tunſum
parcĕre	pĕperciſſe / parſiſſe	parſum	tangĕre	tĕtĭgiſſe	tactum
cădĕre	cĕcĭdiſſe	caſum	pungĕre	pŭpŭgiſſe & punxiſſe	punctum
cædĕre	cĕcīdiſſe	cæſum	fallĕre	fĕfelliſſe	falſum
pĕdĕre	pĕpēdiſſe	pēdĭtum	pellĕre	pĕpŭliſſe	pulſum
cre-dĕre	crē-didiſſe	crēdĭtum	cănĕre	cĕcĭniſſe	cantum
ven-dĕre	ven-dĭdiſſe	vendĭtum	părĕre	pĕpĕriſſe	partum
pendĕre	pĕpendiſſe	penſum	currĕre	cŭcurriſſe	curſum

337. Except. 7. Some take in an *s* before *iſſe*, and ſo make *ſiſſe*; as,

dīcĕre	dixiſſe	dictum	pingĕre	pinxiſſe	pictum
dūcere	duxiſſe	ductum	jungere	junxiſſe	junctum
rĕgĕre	rexiſſe	rectum	sūgĕre	ſuxiſſe	ſuctum
tĕgĕre	texiſſe	tectum	cōmĕre	compſiſſe	comptum
cingĕre	cinxiſſe	cinctum	prōmĕre	promſiſſe	promptum
lingĕre	linxiſſe	linctum	sūmĕre	ſumſiſſe	ſumptum
mingĕre *old* / *new* meiĕre	minxiſſe	mictum	carpĕre	carpſiſſe	carptum
fingĕre	finxiſſe	fictum	ſcalpĕre	ſcalpſiſſe	ſcalptum

338. Except. 8. Of which ſome change the Letter before *ſiſſe*; as,

ſcrībĕre	ſcripſiſſe	ſcriptum	prĕmĕre	preſſiſſe	preſſum
cēdĕre	ceſſiſſe	ceſſum	gĕrĕre	geſſiſſe	geſtum
trăhĕre	traxiſſe	tractum	ūrĕre	uſſiſſe	uſtum
vĕhĕre	vexiſſe	vectum	quătĕre	quaſſiſſe	quaſſum
cŏquĕre	coxiſſe	coctum	vīvĕre	vīxiſſe	victum

339. Except. 9. Some others leave out the Letter before *ſiſſe*; as,

vādĕre	vāſiſſe	vāſum	ſpargĕre	ſparſiſſe	ſparſum
lædĕre	læſiſſe	læſum	temnĕre	temſiſſe	temtum
dīvĭdĕre	dīvīſiſſe	dīviſum	flectere	flexiſſe	flexum
rōdere	rōſiſſe	rōſum	pectĕre	pexiſſe & pexŭiſſe	pexum
lūdĕre	lūſiſſe	luſum	mittĕre	mīſiſſe	miſſum
trūdere	trūſiſſe	trūſum			
claudere	clauſiſſe	clauſum			

340. Except. 10. Some take in a Letter before *ſiſſe*; as,

fluĕre	fluxiſſe	fluxum	ſtruĕre	ſtruxiſſe	ſtructum

341. Except. 11. Some few are otherwiſe formed; as,

pāſcĕre	pāviſſe	paſtum	ſpernere	ſprēviſſe	ſprētum
crēſcĕre	crēviſſe	cretum	ferre	tŭliſſe	lātum
nōſcĕre	nōviſſe	nōtum	eſſe	fŭiſſe	——

tollere	ſuſtŭliſſe	ſublātum	poſſe	pŏtŭiſſe	———
cernere	crēviſſe	crētum			

§. IV. Verbs in īre made Perfect.

Q. *Which is the fifth Rule to form the Perfect and Supine?*

342. *A.* R. V. Verbs in īre are formed by changing īre in the Imperfect into īviſſe in the Perfect, and ītum in the Supine; as,

audīre *to hear*	audīviſſe *to have heard*	auditum *to hear*
finīre *to end*	finīviſſe *to have ended*	finītum *to end*
ſcīre *to know*	ſcīviſſe *to have known*	ſcītum *to know*

So form mūgīre, rūgīre, nūtrire, mūtīre, garrire, and the reſt in īre: but īre *to go* īviſſe *to have gone* ĭtum *to go.*

Q. *Are all Verbs in* ire *ſo formed?*

343. *A.* No, there are *four* Exceptions.

Except. 1. Some caſt off the *i* and ſo make *uiſſe*; as,

sălire	sălŭiſſe	ſaltum	ămĭcire	amĭcŭiſſe	ămictum

Except. 2. Some caſt off the *u* too, and make *iſſe*; as,

venīre	vēniſſe	ventum

Except. 3. Some of theſe take in an *s*, and make *ſſe*; as,

vincīre	vinxiſſe	vinctum	ſancīre	ſanxiſſe	ſanctum

Except. 4. And of theſe ſome caſt away the Letter before *ſſe*; as,

haurire	hauſiſſe	hauſtum	ſentire	ſenſiſſe	ſenſum

N. B. *Thus Verbs in* re *ſignifying* Imperfectly *that the thing is* a-doing *and not* perfectly done, *are turned into an ending in* iſſe *to betoken that it* hath done it perfectly, *and to them we have ſtill added the* Supine.

Q. *Are all Verbs ſo to be turned?*

344. *A.* No, for

1. Some Verbs have no Supines, as you have ſeen before.

2. Some have no Perfects, as audēre——auſum, gaudēre——gaviſum, fidĕre——fiſum.

3. Some have no perfect nor Supine, as aiere, &c.

4. Some have no Imperfect, as——cœpiſſe cœptum, ——memĭniſſe mentum, ——odiſſe oſum.

5. Verbs in *i* have no Perfect, but how they may be made to ſignifie Perfectly you ſhall learn N°.

Q. *But have Verbs in* i *no Supine?*

345. *A.* Verbs Common and Deponent in *i* have a Supine by changing,

1. ari *into* ātum, *as* ſolāri ſolātum, venāri venātum, oſculari oſculatum,

2. ēri *into* ītum; as, verēri verĭtum, tŭēri tŭĭtum, merēri merĭtum.

but fatēri *hath* faſſum, *and* medēri——.

3. By changing i into ĭtum; as, mŏri *to die*, mŏrĭtum *to die*; but,

naſci——	nātum	lŏqui——	lŏcūtum	frŭi—	{frŭĭtum & fructum
obliviſci—	oblītum	quĕri——	queſtum		
grădi—	greſſum	păti——	paſſum		
sĕqui——	sĕcūtum	ūti——	ūſum		

4. īri *into* ītum, *as* mentīri——mentītum, pŏtīri——potītum,
but ordīri——orsum | ex-perīri——ex-pertum
ŏrīri——ortum | metīri——mensum.

CHAP. VIII.

Of a Participle.

Q. *Thus you have ſeen the Nouns, Pronouns and Verbs, the next ſort of words is a Participle; What is a Participle?*

346. *A.* A Participle is a Part of Speech derived of a Verb, and betokens *being*, *doing* or *ſuffering*, as a Verb does, but is otherwiſe like a Noun.

Q. *Which Words then are Participles?*

347. *A.* All thoſe Words are Participles which

1. Are derived from ſome Verb.
2. Betoken *being*, *doing* or *ſuffering*, as a Verb does.
3. And are in other reſpects as Nouns.

Q. *How many ſorts of Participles are there?*

348. *A.* There are Six ſorts of Participles.

Q. *How are theſe derived from their Verbs?*

349. *A.* The ſix ſorts of Participles are formed off from their Verbs according to theſe Rules.

350. *R. I.* From the Verb Infinive Imperfect are formed three Participles.

I. The Participle in *ans*, *ens* or *iens*, by changing,

1. āre *or* āri *into* ans
2. ēre *or* ēri *into* ens
3. ĕre *or* i *into* ens
4. īre *or* īri *into* iens

} and theſe ſignifie being or doing; as,

1. *from*	văcāre	*to be empty,*	vacans	*being empty.*
	ămāre	*to love,*	amans	*loving.*
	mīrāri	*to wonder,*	mirans	*wondering*
2. *from*	călēre	*to be hot,*	calens	*being hot.*
	dŏcēre	*to teach,*	docens	*teaching.*
	vĕrēri	*to fear,*	verens	*fearing.*
3. *from*	lĕgĕre	*to read,*	legens	*reading.*
	ĕmĕre	*to buy,*	emens	*buying.*
	veſci	*to feed,*	veſcens	*feeding.*
4. *from*	audīre	*to hear,*	audiens	*hearing.*
	haurīre	*to draw*	hauriens	*drawing.*
	mentīri	*to lye,*	mentiens	*lying,*

351. II. The participle in andus, endus *or* iendus, by changing,

1. āri *into* andus
2. ēri *into* endus
3. ī *into* endus
4. īri *into* iendus

} And theſe in *dus* ſignifie paſſively to be done, or about to be done or acted upon; as,

1. *from*	amāri	*to be loved,*	amandus	*one to be loved.*
	damnāri	*to be damned,*	damnandus	*one to be damned.*
	mirāri	*to admire,*	mirandus	*one to be admired.*
2. *from*	dŏcēri	*to be taught,*	docendus	*one to be taught.*
	hăbēri	*to be had,*	habendus	*one to be had.*
	vĕrēri	*to fear,*	verendus	*one to be feared.*
3. *from*	lĕgi	*to be read,*	legendus	*one to be read.*
	frŭi	*to enjoy,*	fruendus	*one to be enjoyed.*
	naſci	*to be born,*	naſcendus	*one to be born.*
4. *from*	audīri	*to be heard,*	audĭendus	*one to be heard.*
	nūtrīri	*to be nurſed,*	nutriendus	*one to be nurſed.*
	mētīri	*to meaſure,*	metiendus	*one to be meaſured.*

352. III. The firſt Supine in *tum* or *ſum*, of which you have heard already, Chap. VII. §. 6.

Q. *Thus we have the three Participles formed from the Verb Imperfect, now ſay whence are the other three Participles formed?*

353. *R. II.* From the firſt Supine in *um* come three other Participles.

I. The latter Supine, by changing *um* into *u*, and it ſignifies Paſſively *to be done*; as from,

amātum	*to love,*	amātu	*to be loved.*	audĭtum——	audĭtu
lectum	*to read,*	lectu	*to be read.*	doctum——	doctu
factum	*to do*	factu	*to be done.*	dictum——	dictu

354. II. The Participle in *urus* by changing *um* into *urus*, and it ſignifies *about to be*, or *about to doe*; as from,

vacātum	*to be empty,*	vacātūrus	*one about to be empty.*
amātum	*to love,*	amātūrus	*one going to love.*
doctum	*to teach,*	doctūrus	*one about to teach.*
lectum	*to reade,*	lectūrus	*one about to reade.*
audĭtum	*to hear,*	audĭtūrus	*one about to hear.*
nexum	*to joyn,*	nexūrus	*one about to joyn.*
flexum	*to bend,*	flexūrus	*one about to bend.*
mŏrĭtum	*to die,*	mŏrĭtūrus	*one about to die.*

355. III. The Participle in *tus* or *ſus*, by changing *um* into *us*.

Q. *How doth this Participle in* tus *and* ſus *ſignifie? Actively? or Paſſively?*

356. *A.* The Participle in *tus* or *ſus*,

1. If it come from a Verb *Deponent* ſignifies *Actively having done*; as from, locūtum *to ſpeak*, locutus *having ſpoke*; lapſum *to ſlip*, lapſus *having ſlipt*; ratum *to ſuppoſe*, ratus *having ſuppoſed*, &c.

2. If

2. If it come from a Verb Common it ſignifies both *Actively* and *Paſſively*; as from,

menſum *to meſure*, menſus *having meſured*, and *having been meſured*.
oſcŭlātum *to kiſs*, oſcŭlātus *having kiſſed*, and *having been kiſſed*.

3. But if it come from any other Verb, it ſignifies *Paſſively having been done*; as from,

amātum *to love*, amātus *loved*, or *being loved*, or *having been loved*.
doctum *to teach*, doctus *taught*, or *being taught*, or *having been taught*.
lectum *to reade*, lectus *read*, or *being read*, or *having been read*.
audītum *to hear*, auditus *heard*, or *being heard*, or *having been heard*.

Q. *Which of theſe ſix Participles ſignifie Perfectly? and which Imperfectly?*

357. *A.* This Participle in *tus* or *ſus* ſignifies *Perfectly*, as locūtus *having ſpoke already*, doctus *being taught Perfectly*; the other Participles ſignifie *Imperfectly*, that the thing is doing, or about to do, but not perfectly done.

Q. *Are the Participles Subſtantive? or Adjective?*

358. *A.* The two Supines are Participles Subſtantive, all the reſt are Adjective; amātus *one loved*, amandus *one to be loved*.

Q. *Now tell me what Participles are formed from theſe Verbs?*

narrare	venāri	farcire	ſarcire	vidēre
tenēre	gemĕre	fulcire	gerĕre	nectĕre
ſorbēre	quĕri	pellĕre	ſcire	monſtrare
vendĕre	frŭi	rumpĕre	conari	pŏlire, *&c.*

Q. *From theſe Supines what Participles are formed?*

narrātum	venātum	fartum	ſartum	vīſum
tentum	gĕmĭtum	fultum	geſtum	nexum
ſorptum	queſtum	pulſum	ſcītum	monſtrātum
vendĭtum	frŭĭtum	ruptum	conatum	politum

And ſo far of Participles.

CHAP. IX.

Of Adverbs.

Q. *What is an Adverb?*

359. *A.* An Adverb is a Part of Speech moſtly joined to a Verb to ſhew *whether* or *no*, or *how*, or *where*, or *when* any thing *is*, *does* or *ſuffers*.

§. *The*

§. *The moſt uſual Adverbs, eſpecially Primitive.*

360. Q. *Whether?* nŭm? ăn?
Or no? nĕ?
is your brother come?
A. *Yea, yea* īmo, næ
yea indeed quĭdem
almoſt fere *or* ferme
no, not nē, non, haud
ſcarcely vix
361. Q. *Where* ŭbi
is he?
A. *Here* hīc
there ĭbi
if any where uſquam
no where nuſquam
far off prŏcŭl
nigh prŏpĕ
362. Q. *Whence* unde?
came he?
A. *Hence* hinc
thence inde
363. Q. *Whither* quo?
goes he?
A. *Hither* huc
364. Q. *When* quando
came he?
A. *Then* tunc, tŭm
when I came cŭm
yeſterday (ſince hĕri
ere-while, ſometime dūdum
long ago ōlim
365. Q. *How long* quamdĭu?
ſtays he?
A. *A long time* dĭu
while I ſtay dŭm
until I go dōnĕc
366. Q. *When returns he?*
A. *Now* nunc, jam
ſtrait, by and by mŏx
if at any time, ever unquam
never nunquam
367. Q. *How oft doth he ride?* quŏties
A. *once* sĕmĕl
twice bĭs
thrice tĕr
four times quătĕr
oft ſæpĕ
always ſemper
368. Q. *How* quōmŏdo
doth he act?
A. *So, thus* sīc, ĭtă
raſhly tĕmĕrĕ
in vain fruſtrā
we act together sĭmŭl
369. Q. *Why?* quārē? cūr?
Q. *How* quām
big is he?
as big tăm
as I quam
more big măgĭs
than I. quăm

CHAP. X.

Concerning Prepoſitions.

Q. *What is a Prepoſition?*

370. *A.* A Prepoſition is a Word ſet before a Subſtantive, and betokens the reſpect one thing has to another, as that one thing is

before

before another or *behind* it,	*within* it or *without* it,	*beyond* it or *behither* it,	*above* it or *below* it, &c.

Q. *How many ſuch Prepoſitions are there?*

371. *A.* There be three and fourty Words that are Prepoſitions.

The Fourty three Prepoſitions.

372. §. I.

ăd	*at, to*
advĕrsŭs	*towards*
ăpŭd	*at, with*
ante	*before*
cis / citra	*behither* / *ſhort of*
cĭrcum	*about, round*
circa	*about, nigh to*
contra	*againſt*
erga	*towards*
extra	*without, on the out ſide*
intra	*within*
infra	*beneath, below*
inter	*between, among*
juxta	*beſide, nigh to*
ŏb	*for, becauſe of*
pĕnĕs	*with one, in ones keeping*
pĕr	*through, by*
pōne	*behind*
poſt	*after, ſince*
prætĕr	*beſides*
propter	*nigh to, and for*
sĕcundum	*after, according to*
sĕcŭs	*by, cloſe by*
ſupra	*above, over*
trans	*over, to the other ſide*
ultra	*beyond*

373. §. II.

ăb *or* ā *or* ăbs	*from*
abſq;	*without, not with*
cŭm	*with, together with*
cōram	*before, in ones preſence*
clam	*out of ſight*
dē	*from* and *concerning*
ex *or* ē	*out of*
pălam	*before, in ſight of*
præ	*before, more than*
prō	*for, inſtead of*
sĭne	*without, not with*
tēnŭs	*up to*

374. §. III.

ĭn	*in*, and *into*
sŭb	*under*
ſubter	*under*
sŭper	*above*

CHAP. XI.

Of a Conjunction.

Q. *What is a Conjunction?*

375. *A.* A Conjunction is a Word which joineth two Sentences together, thus,

376. The King comes		the Queen comes.
and	ĕt, quĕ, atq;	
alſo, too	quŏq;	

377. *Neither*	nĕq; nĕc

the

the King comes
nor nĕq; nĕc
the Queen comes.
377. *Either* aut, vĕl, vĕ
the King comes
or aut, vel, vĕ
the Queen comes.
378. The King comes not
but sĕd, aſt, ăt, autem
the Queen comes.
379. The King comes
becauſe quĭa
the Queen comes.
380. The King will not come
for năm, ĕnim
the Queen comes not.
381. The King comes
if ſi
the Queen comes.
382. The King comes not
unleſs nī, nĭſi
the Queen comes.
383. The King comes
therefore ergo, ĭgĭtŭr
the Queen comes.
384. *Although* quamquam
the King comes
yet, nevertheleſs tămĕn
the Queen comes not.
385. The King comes
that, to the end that ŭt, ŭti
the Queen ſhould come.
386. I heartily wiſh
that ŭt, ŭtinam
the Queen would come.
387. *So* ĭta
the King comes
as ŭt
the Queen comes.

CHAP. XII.

Of an Interjection.

Q. *What is an interjection?*

388. *A.* An interjection is a Word which alone betokens ſome meaning of our mind; as,

O! *oh!*	ō!	*wailaday! wo!*	hei! væ!
ſoho!	ēho! heus!	*phy, piſh*	phy! au!
lo, behold	ēn! ecce!	*huſh, whiſt*	ſt! au, &c.

N. B. *The Interjections are moſtly uſed to denote ſome ſudden paſſion of the mind.*

N. B. *Thus you have learned the eight ſorts of Words uſed in ſpeaking, now tell me which of theſe Words are* Nouns, *which* Pronouns, *which* Verbs, &c.

tū	*thou*	ſuāvis	*ſweet*	ŭt	*that*
ĕgo	*I*	pŭer	*a boy*	mĕŭs	*mine*
trĕmĕre	*to tremble*	tămen	*yet*	eſſe	*to be*
phy!	*out upon't*	sōlus	*alone*	ēn!	*lo!*
tĕmĕre	*raſhly*	mŭlier	*a woman*	hīc	*here*
contra	*againſt*	arbŏr	*a tree*	currĕre	*to run*

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Concerning the Declining of Words.

N.B. NOW *that you have ſeen* the eight Parts of Speech, *you muſt next learn which of them are* Declined *and which* Undeclined; *therefore,*

Q. *What is it to* Decline *a Word?*

389. *A.* To *Decline a word* is to turn it into a divers ending.

Q. *To what purpoſe is a Word ſo turned into another ending?*

390. *A.* A Word is turned into another ending to notifie ſomething more to us than it did before ſo that it not only ſignifies *ſo* or *ſo*, but it *adſignifies* that, and ſomewhat further; as,

homo *a man*, puer *a boy*, muſa *a ſong* } is turned into { hŏmĭnes *men*, pŭĕri *boys*, mūſæ *ſongs.*

N. B. 1. *Some Words in declining do encreaſe and ſome do not.* 2. *To increaſe is to have more Syllables than it had before.*

Q. *May all ſorts of Words be ſo declined into other endings?*

391. *A.* No words that are *Adverbs, Conjunctions Prepoſitions* or *Interjections* can be thus turned into *freſh endings*, but all ſuch Words keep their *firſt* ending, and ſo are *Undeclined*, as sĕmĕl, ĕt, ăd, heu.

Q. *Which Words then are they that be declined?*

392. *A.* All Words that are *Nouns*, or *Pronouns*, or *Verbs*, or *Participles* may be *declined.*

N. B. *So then* four *ſorts of Words* viz. { *Nouns*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, *Participles* } *are Declined,* | *and* four *ſorts of Words,* viz. { *Adverbs*, *Conjunctions*, *Prepoſitions*, and *Interjections* } *are Undeclined.*

Q. *Are all the Declined Words Declined after the ſame manner?*

393. *A.* No: Nouns, Pronouns and Participles are declined after *one* manner, and Verbs are Declined after *another* manner.

CHAP. XIV.

The Declining of Nouns, Pronouns and Participles.

Q. WHy *are Nouns, Pronouns and Participles turned into other endings?*

394. *A.* Nouns, Pronouns and Participles are changed into another ending,

1. To

1. To adſignifie the Gender, as agnus *an he lamb*, agna *a ſhe lamb*.
2. To adſignifie the Number, as homo *one man*, homĭnes *more men*.
3. To adſignifie the Caſe, as homo *a man*, hominis *of a man*, &c.

§. 1. *Three Genders.*

Q. *How many Genders are there?*

395. *A.* As of things there be *three* kinds, 1. ſome *males*, 2. ſome *females*, 3. ſome *neither* males nor females:

So of the Words there are *three* ſorts, 1. ſome of the *Maſculine* Gender, 2. ſome of the *Feminine*, 3. ſome of the *Neuter*.

N. B. *And theſe have often different endings to deſtinguiſh them one from another.*

N. B. *Before Words of* { *the Maſculine Gender* / *the Feminine Gender* / *the Neuter Gender* } *they uſe to ſet* { hic / hæc / hōc } *as a mark to know them by.*

§. Rules of the Genders of Subſtantives.

Q. *Which Words are of the Maſculine Gender?*

396. *A.* R. I. Every Subſtantive that adſignifies a *male*, is of the Maſculine Gender; as,

hic mās	*a male*	hic fīlĭus	*a ſon*
hic vĭr	*a man*	hic ĕquus	*an horſe*
hic Adāmus	*Adam*	hic aſĭnus	*an he-aſs*
hic Joánnēs	*John*	hic agnus	*an he-lamb*
hic măgíſter	*a maſter*	hic Rex	*a King*
hic pătĕr	*a father*	hic pŭer	*a boy*, &c.

Q. *Which Words are of the Feminine Gender?*

397. *A.* R. II. Every Subſtantive that adſignifies a *female*, is of the Feminine Gender; as,

hæc femĭna	*a female*	hæc fīlĭa	*a daughter*
hæc mŭlĭer	*a woman*	hæc ĕqua	*a mare*
hæc Eva	*Eve*	hæc aſĭna	*a ſhe-aſs*
hæc Joánna	*Joan*	hæc agna	*a ſhe-lamb*
hæc măgiſtra	*a miſtreſs*	hæc Regīna	*a Queen*
hæc mātĕr	*a mother*	hæc pŭélla	*a girl*, &c.

Q. *Are there no Words of* both *the Maſculine and Feminine Gender?*

398. *A.* R. III. Every Subſtantive that adſignifies both the *male* and the *female* is of the (*Common of two*, that is, it is *both* of the) Maſculine and of the Feminine Gender; as,

hic

hic & hæc părens	*a parent*	hic & hæc hærēs	*an heir*
hic & hæc fūr	*a thief*	hic & hæc custōs	*a keeper*
hic & hæc dŭx	*a guide*	hic & hæc sūs	*an hog*, &c.

So hic părens is *an he parent* or *a father*, hæc parens *is a she-parent* or *a mother*, hic fūr *an he-thief*, hæc fūr *a she-thief*, &c.

Q. *Which Words are of the Neuter Gender?*

399. *A.* Every Substantive that adsignifies neither *male* nor *female* should be of the *Neuter* Gender, but they are not *all* so; But some such are of the *Neuter*, some of the *Masculine*, some of the *Feminine*, and some *Doubtfull*.

Q. *How may I know which be of the* Neuter, *which of the* Masculine, *and which of the* Feminine?

400. *A.* In the Vocabulary the

Masculine	*are marked with*	*m*
Fæminine		*f*
Neuter		*n*
Common		*c*
Doubtfull		*d*.

§. Rules for the Genders of Adjectives.

Q. *Of what Gender are Adjectives?*

401. *A.* All Words that are Adjective are of all the three Genders, either

under one termination; as,	hic felix	*or under two; as,*	hic tristis	*or under three; as,*	hic bonus
	hæc feiix		hæc tristis		hæc bona
	hoc felix		hoc triste		hoc bŏnum
	hic vĕtŭs		hic suavis		hic mălus
	hæc vetus		hæc suavis		hæc mala
	hoc vetus		hoc suave		hoc malum.

§. 2. *Of the two Numbers.*

Q. *How many Numbers are there?*

402. *A.* There be *two Numbers*, the *Singular* and the *Plural*. For *one* is a Singular Number, and *more* than one is a Plural Number.

Q. *Which Words are of the Singular Number?*

403. *A.* Those Words are of the *Singular* Number which signifie *but one*; as, hŏmo *a man*, pŭer *a boy*, mūsa *a song*.

Q. *Which Words are of the Plural Number?*

404. *A.* Those Words are of the *Plural* Number which signifie *more than one*; as, hŏmĭnes *men*, pŭĕri *boys*, mūsæ *songs*.

Q. *Of these Words following which are of the Singular, and which are of the Plural?*

terra

terra *land*	schŏla *a school*	discĭpŭli *scholars*	porta *a gate*
arma *arms*	schŏlæ *schools*	discipŭlus *a scholar*	mœnĭa *walls*, &c.

§. 3. *Of the Six Cases.*

Q. *How many Cases are there?*

405. *A.* There be *six Cases*,

the *Nominative*
the *Genitive*
the *Dative*
the *Accusative*
the *Vocative*
the *Ablative*
} Case.

N. B. *And these Cases have different endings to distinguish one from anoth*

2. *And to* Decline *a Noun, Pronoun or Participle is to give the right endi of every Case in each Number.*

§. 4. *The Five Declensions.*

Q. *How many ways are Nouns, Pronouns and Participles Declined?*

406. *A.* There are *five* ways of declining Nouns, Pronouns and Partic ples, which are called the *five Declensions*. For some are declined after t *first* way, some after the *second*, some after the *third*, some after the *four* and some after the *fifth*.

407. N. B. *Here note these* four *things, that in every Declension,*

1. *The Vocative Singular is the same with the Nominative Singular.*
2. *The Vocative Plural is ever the same with the Nominative Plural.*
3. *The Ablative Plural is ever the same with the Dative Plural.*
4. *All Words of the Neuter Gender have their Nominative, Accusative a Vocative alike in both Numbers, and in the Plural Number these three Cases e in ă.*

1. *Th*

I. *The First Declension.*

Q. *What words are of the first Declension?*

408. *A.* Words in ă are of the first Declension.

Q. *How are they Declined?*

409. *A.* Words of the first Declension have their

Nominative	of the Singular Number in	ă	*Nominative*	of the Plural Number in	æ
Genitive		æ	*Genitive*		ārum
Dative		æ	*Dative*		īs
Accuſative		ām	*Accuſative*		ās
Vocative		ă	*Vocative*		æ
Ablative		ā	*Ablative*		īs

Q. *Give me ſome Exemples of Words thus declined?*

410. *A.*

Singular	*N.*	hæc muſ-a *a ſong*	*Plural*	*N.*	muſ-æ *ſongs*
	G.	muſ-æ *of a ſong*		*G.*	muſ-ārum *of ſongs*
	D.	muſ-æ *to a ſong*		*D.*	muſ-īs *to ſongs*
	A.	muſ-am *a ſong*		*Ac.*	muſ-ās *ſongs*
	V.	o muſ-ă *o ſong*		*V.*	o muſ-æ *o ſongs*
	Ab.	muſ-ā *by a ſong*		*Ab.*	muſ-īs *by ſongs.*

So decline menſa, terra, umbra, natūra, fortūna, pruīna, *&c.*

Singular	*N.*	hæc ánĭm-a *a ſoul*	*Plural*	*N.*	ánĭm-æ *ſouls*
	G.	ánim-æ *of a ſoul*		*G.*	anim-árum *of ſouls*
	D.	ánim-æ *to a ſoul*		*D.*	ánim-īs *to ſouls*
	Ac.	ánim-am *a ſoul*		*Ac.*	ánim-as *ſouls*
	V.	o ánim-a *o ſoul*		*V.*	o ánim-æ *o ſouls*
	Ab.	ánim-a *by a ſoul*		*Ab.*	ánim-īs *by ſouls*

So decline materia, nebŭla, minĕra, ſalvia, and all in *a*.

Q. *Are no Words of the firſt Declenſion but thoſe that end in* a?

411. *A.* Some few Words in ās, as Satănās, Lucās, Thōmās, are of this firſt Declenſion, and make their Voc. Sing. in ā long; as,

Singular	*N.*	hic Sátăn-as *Satan*	N. B. *Words of the firſt Declenſion, you ſee, do not increaſe in any Caſe ſave the Genitive Plural.*
	G.	Sátăn-æ *of Satan*	
	D.	Sátan-æ *to Satan*	
	Ac.	Sátan-am *Satan*	
	V.	o Sátan-ā *o Satan*	
	Ab.	Sátan-a *by Satan*, &c.	

II. *The Second Declenſion.*

Q. *Which Words are of the Second Declenſion?*

412. *A.* All Words in *um*, and thoſe in *er* and *us* that are marked in the Vocabulary with i are of the ſecond Declenſion.

Q. *How are Words of the Second Declenſion declined?*

413. *A.* Words of the ſecond Declenſion have their

Nom.	of the Singular Number in	ŭs, ĕr *or* ŭm	*Nom.*	in the Plural Number in	ī *but Neut. in* ă
Gen.		ī	*Gen.*		ōrum
Dat.		ō	*Dat.*		īs
Acc.		ŭm	*Acc.*		ōs *Neut. in* a
Voc.		ĕ, ĕr *or* ŭm	*Voc.*		ī, *and Neut. in* a
Abl.		ō	*Abl.*		īs

Q. *But here the Vocative Singular is not ever like the Nominative?*

414. *A.* Note, That when the Nominative in the Second Declenſion ends in ŭs the Vocative Singular endeth in ĕ, as hic Dŏmĭnŭs *a Lord*, Voc. o Dŏmĭnĕ *o Lord*. Except *Deus*, *o Deus*, ; but *filius* and Proper Names in *ius* for *ie* have i, o fili, o Antoni.

Q. *Give me ſome Exemples of Words ſo declined.*

415. I. *Exemples of Words in* ŭs.

Singular	*N.*	hic mŭnd-ŭs *the world*	*Plural*	*N.*	mŭnd-ī *worlds*
	G.	mŭnd-ī *of the world*		*G.*	mŭnd-ōrum *of worlds*
	D.	mŭnd-ō *to the world*		*D.*	mŭnd-īs *to worlds*
	Ac.	mŭnd-ŭm *the world*		*Ac.*	mŭnd-ōs *worlds*
	V.	o mŭnd-ĕ *o the world*		*N.*	o mŭnd-ī *o worlds*
	Ab.	mŭnd-ō *by the world*		*Ab.*	mŭnd-īs *by worlds*

So decline Dĕŭs, mŏdus, lŏcus, cryſtallus, ſapphirus, and all in *us* marked with (*i*).

3. *Singular*	*N.*	hic dŏmĭn-us *a lord*	*Plural*	*N.*	dŏmin-i *lords*
	G.	dŏmin-ī *of a lord*		*G.*	domin-ōrum *of lords*
	D.	dŏmin-o *to a lord*		*D.*	dŏmin-īs *to lords*
	Ac.	dŏmin-um *a lord*		*Ac.*	dŏmin-ōs *lords*
	V.	o dŏmĭn-e *o lord*		*V.*	o dŏmin-i *o lords*
	Ab.	dŏmin-o *by a lord*		*Ab.*	dŏmin-īs *by lords*

So decline nŭmĕrus, tĕrmĭnus, ăngĕlus, ănimus, and all marked (*i*).

416. II. *Words in* ĕr.

Singular	*N.*	hic pŭĕr *a boy*	*Plural*	*N.*	pŭĕr-i *boys*
	G.	pŭĕr-i *of a boy*		*G.*	pŭĕr-ŏrum *of boys*
	D.	pŭĕr-o *to a boy*		*D.*	pŭĕr-īs *to boys*
	Ac.	pŭĕr-um *a boy*		*Ac.*	pŭĕr-ōs *boys*
	V.	o pŭĕr *o boy*		*V.*	o pŭĕr-ī *o boys*
	Ab.	pŭĕr-o *by a boy*		*Ab.*	pŭĕr-īs *by boys*

417. N. B.

417. N. B. *There are ſix Subſtantives that thus increaſe ſhort*, puer, adulter, préſbyter, sŏcer, gĕnĕr *and* vir vĭri, *all the reſt do not increaſe thus.*

Singular	*N.*	hic liber *a book*	*Plural*	*N.*	lib-ri *books*
	G.	lib-ri *of a book*		*G.*	lib-rórum *of books*
	D.	lib-ro *to a book*		*D.*	lib-ris *to books*
	Ac.	lib-rum *a book*		*Ac.*	lib-rōs *books*
	V.	o lĭbĕr *o book*		*V.*	o lib-ri *o books*
	Ab.	lib-ro *by a book*		*Ab.*	lib-rīs *by books*

So decline cancer, caper, ăger, făber, culter.

Singular	*N.*	hic magíſt-er *a maſter*	*Plural*	*N.*	magíſt-ri *maſters*
	G.	magíſt-ri *of a maſter*		*G.*	magíſt-rórum *of maſters*
	D.	magíſt-ro *to a maſter*		*D.*	magíſt-rīs *to maſters*
	A.	magíſt-rum *a maſter*		*Ac.*	magíſt-rōs *maſters*
	V.	o magíſt-er *o maſter*		*V.*	o magíſt-ri *o maſters*
	Ab.	magíſt-ro *by a maſter*		*Ab.*	magíſt-rīs *by maſters*

So decline *Miniſter.*

N. B. *Thus far the Accuſative Plural is different from the Nominative Plural, but in the ways of declining to come the Accuſative Plural is the ſame with the Nominative and Vocative Plural.*

418. III. *Words in* um.

Singular	*N.*	hoc regn-um *a kingdom*	*Plural*	*N.*	regn-ă *kingdoms*
	G.	regn-i *of a kingdom*		*G.*	regn-ōrum *of kingdoms*
	D.	regn-o *to a kingdom*		*D.*	regn-īs *to kingdoms*
	Ac.	regn-um *a kingdom*		*Ac.*	regn-ă *kingdoms*
	V.	o regn-um *o kingdom*		*V.*	o regn-ă *o kingdoms*
	Ab.	regn-o *by a kingdom*		*Ab.*	regn-īs *by kingdoms*

So decline ſignum, ſpatium, membrum and all in *um.*

N. B. *For* nihilum *in the Nominative and Accuſative they oft ſay* nĭhĭl *and* nīl. *And ſo much for the ſecond Declenſion.*

III. *The Third Declenſion.*

Q. *Which Words are declined after the third way?*

419. *A.* All Words ending in *e*, *l*, *n* and *o*,
in *ar*, *er*, *ur* and *ut*,
in *as*, *is*, *os* and *s* with a Conſonant before it, and moſt ending in *er*, *es* and *us* are of the Third Declenſion.

Q. *How are theſe turned into the right ending of every Caſe?*

420. *A.* Words of the Third Declenſion have their

Nom. & V.	in the Singular Number in	e, l, n, &c.	*Nom. & V.*	in the Plural Number in	ēs, *Neut. in* ă
Gen.		ĭs	*Gen.*		ŭm
Dat.		ī	*Dat.*		ĭbŭs
Acc.		ĕm	*Acc.*		ēs, *and Neut. in* ă
Abl.		ĕ	*Abl.*		ĭbus

Q. *Give me ſome Exemples of Words ſo declined?*

421. *A.* Here follow Exemples of three ſorts;

1. Of Words that do not increaſe in the Genit. as mărĕ, mărĭs.
2. Of Words that increaſe with the laſt Syl. but one long, as virtūs, virtūtis.
3. Of Words that increaſe with that Syllable ſhort, as lăpĭs, lăpĭdis.

I. *Exemples of Words not increaſing.*

Q. *Which Words in the third Declenſion do not increaſe in the Genitive Singular?*

422. *A.* All Words ending in e, and moſt in ēs and ĭs do not increaſe in the Genitive Singular, and theſe make the Genitive Plural in *ium*.

1.

Singular	*N.*	hoc rēt-e *a net*	*Plural*	*N.*	ret-ia *nets*
	G.	ret-is *of a net*		*G.*	ret-ium *of nets*
	D.	ret-i *to a net*		*D.*	ret-ĭbus *to nets*
	Ac.	ret-e *a net*		*Ac.*	ret-ia *nets*
	V.	o ret-e *o net*		*V.*	o ret-ia *o nets*
	Ab.	ret-i *by a net*		*Ab.*	ret-ĭbus *by nets*

N. B. *Inſtead of* lacte *in the Nom. Accuſ and Voc. they uſe* lac, *but no Plur.*

Q. *But here the Ablative does not end in* e *as it ſhould do.*

423. *A.* Neuters in *e* make the Ablative in *i*, and the Nominative Plural in *ia*.

So decline mărе, altārе, and all in *e*.

2.es

Singular	*N.*	hæc nūb-ēs	*Plural*	*N.*	-ēs
	G.	-ĭs		*G.*	-ium
	D.	-ī		*D.*	-ĭbus
	Ac	-ĕm		*Ac.*	-ēs
	V.	-s		*V.*	-ēs
	Ab.	-ĕ		*Ab.*	-ĭbus

3.is

Singular.	*N.*	hæc peſt-ĭs	*Plural*	*N.*	-ēs
	G.	-is		*G.*	-ium
	D.	-ī		*D.*	-ĭbus
	Ac.	-em		*Ac.*	-ēs
	V.	-is		*V.*	-ēs
	Ab.	-e		*Ab.*	-ĭbus

So decline vulpēs, fămēs, sēdēs, fĭnĭs, pōstĭs, pānĭs, collĭs, *&c.*

424. II. *Exemples of Words that increaſe long.*

Singular	*N.& V.*	căl-or	*Plural*	*N.& V.*	-ōres
	G.	-ōris		*G.*	-ōrum
	D.	-ōri		*D.*	-ōrĭbus
	Ac.	-ōrem		*Ac.*	-ōres
	Ab.	-ōre		*Ab.*	-ōrĭbus

Singular	*N.& V.*	ferm-o	*Plural*	*N.& V.*	ōnes
	G.	-ōnis		*G.*	-ōnum
	D.	-ōni		*D.*	-ōnĭbus
	Ac.	-ōnem		*Ac.*	-ōnes
	Ab.	-ōne		*Ab.*	-ōnĭbus

So decline col-ŏr -ōris, anim-ăl -ālis, vēr vēris, æst-ās -ātis, tell-ūs -ūris, eo leōnis, lig-o -ōnis, mōs mōris, adăm-ās -antis, *&c.*

425. II.

425. III. *Exemples of Words increaſing ſhort.*

Singular	*N. V.*	hic lăp-is	*Plural*	*N & V.*	-ĭdes	*Singular*	*N. & V.* mil-ĕs *a ſouldier*
	G.	-ĭdis		*G.*	-ĭdum		*G.* mil-ĭtis *of a ſouldier*
	D.	-ĭdi		*D.*	-ĭdĭbus		*D.* mil-ĭti *to a ſouldier*
	Ac.	-ĭdem		*Ac.*	-ĭdēs		*Ac.* mil-ĭtem *a ſouldier*
	Ab.	-ĭde		*Ab.*	-ĭdĭbus		*Ab.* mil-ĭte *by a ſouldier*, &c.

So decline paſsĕr -is, jud-ex -ĭcis, lim-ĕs -ĭtis, virg-o -ĭnis, *&c.*

Singular	*N. Ac. V.*	hoc corp-ŭs *a body*	*Plural*	*N. Ac. V.*	córp-ŏra *bodies*	*Singular*	*N. Ac. V.*	hoc nōm-en *a name*	*Plural*	*N. Ac. V.* ĭna *names*
	G.	córp-ŏris		*G.*	corp-ŏrum		*G.*	-ĭnis		*G.* ĭnum
	D.	córp-ŏri		*D.*	corp-ŏrĭbus		*D.*	-ĭni		*D.* ĭnĭbus
	Ab.	córp-ŏre		*A.*	corp-ŏrĭbus		*Ab.*	-ĭne		*Ab.* ĭnĭbus

So decline gĕn-ŭs -ĕris, căp-ŭt -ĭtis, fœd-ŭs -ĕris, alūm-ĕn -ĭnis, *&c.*

IV. *The Fourth Declenſion.*

Q. *Which Words are Declined after the Fourth way?*

426. *A.* All Subſtantives in u, and many in ŭs are of the Fourth Declenſion.

Q. *How are Words in* ŭs *declined?*

427. *A.* Words in *us* have their

Nom.	*Singular in*	ŭ	*Nom.*	*Plural in*	ūs	*Singular*	N. hic	frúctŭs	*Plural*	*N.* frúctūs
Gen.		ūs	*Gen.*		ŭum		*G.*	frúctūs		*G.* frúctŭum
Dat.		ui	*Dat.*		ĭbus		*D.*	frúctŭi		*D.* frúctĭbus
Acc.		ūm	*Acc.*		ūs		*Ac.*	frúctūm		*Ac.* frúctūs
Voc.		ŭs	*Voc.*		ūs		*V.* o	frúctŭs		*V.* o frúctūs
Abl.		ū	*Abl.*		ĭbus		*Ab.*	frúctū		*Ab.* frúctĭbus

So decline ſpírĭtŭs, lacŭs, *and all in* ŭs *marked* (ūs).

Q. *How are Words in* u *declined?*

428. *A.* Words in *u* in the Singular have all their Caſes in *u* and in the Plural have the *N. V. Ac.* in ua, *G.* in ŭum, *D.* and *Ab.* in ĭbus.

So decline gĕnu *and* cornu.

V. *The Fifth Declenſion.*

Q. *Which Words are of the Fifth Declenſion?*

429. *A.* Res, ſpes *and* fides *faith*, and moſt Subſtantives in *ies* are of the Fifth Declenſion.

Q. *How are Words of the* Fifth *Declenſion declined in all Caſes?*

430. *A.* Words of the Fifth Declenſion have their

	Singular in	Plural in	Singular	Plural
N.	ēs	*N.* ēs	*N.* hæc faci-ēs	*N.* -ēs
G.	ēi	*V.* ēs	*G.* faci-ēi	*G.* -ērum
D.	ēi	*Ac.* ērum	*D.* faci-ēi	*D.* -ēbus
Ac.	ēm	*G.* ēbus	*Ac.* faci-ēm	*Ac.* -ēs
V.	ēs	*D.*	*V.* o faci-ēs	*V.* o -ēs
Ab.	ē	*Ab.*	*Ab.* faci-ē	*Ab.* -ēbus

So *decline* dies, ſcabies, acies, *and* rēs, ſpes, fidēs, *but theſe three make* rēi ſpēi fidēi, *ſhort in the* Genitive *and* Dative Singular.

Q. *Now give me the Endings of every Caſe in every Declenſion.*

431. *A.* The Endings of every Caſe in every Declenſion.

		I. *Dec.*	II. *Dec.*	III. *Declenſion.*	IV. *Dec.*	V. *D.*
Singular	*Nom.*	ă. āS	ŭs, ĕr, ŭm	ĕ, l, n, o, ăr, ŏr, ŭr, ŭt, ās, ĭs, ōs, *&c.*	ŭs, u	ēs
	Voc.	ă, ā	ĕ, ĕr, ŭm	e, l, n, o, ar, or, ur, ut, as, is, os, *&c.*	ŭs, u	ēs
	Gen.	æ	ī	ĭs	ūs, u	ēi
	Dat.	æ	ō	i	ŭi, u	ēi
	Acc.	ām	ŭm	ĕm *or* im	ūm, u	ēm
	Abl.	ā	ō	ĕ *or* i	u u	ē
Plural	*Nom.*	æ	i *N.* a	ēs *N.* ă *or* ia	ūs, ua	ēs
	Voc.	æ	i *N.* a	ēs *N.* ă *or* ia	ŭs, ua	ēs
	Gen.	ārum	ōrum	um *or* ium	ŭum	ērum
	Dat.	īs	īs	ĭbus	ĭbus	ēbus
	Acc.	ās	ōs *N.* a	ēs *N.* ă *or* ia	ūs, ua	ēs
	Abl.	īs	īs	ĭbus	ĭbus	ēbus

Q. *How then ſhall we know of which Declenſion any Word is?*

432. *A.* By the ending of each *Caſe*, but eſpecially by the ending of the *Genitive Singular*: thus,

Every Word that hath { æ, i, is, ūs, ēi } in the *Genit. Singular* is of the { Firſt, Second, Third, Fourth, Fifth } Declenſion.

N. B. *Now go back and tell me what Declenſion every Noun Subſtantive is of.*

Q. *Are*

Q. *Are all Nouns, Pronouns and Participles declined after one of theſe Five Declenſions?*

433. *A.* There are three Pronouns, ego, tu, ſui, otherwiſe declined: thus,

Singular	*Nom.*	ĕgo *I*	*Plural*	*Nom.*	nōs *we*
	Gen.	mĕi *of me*		*Gen.*	noſtrum *or* noſtri *of us*
	Dat.	mĭhi *to me*		*Dat.*	nōbīs *to us*
	Acc.	mē *me*		*Acc.*	nōs *us*
	Abl.	me *by me*		*Abl.*	nōbīs *by us*
Singular	*Nom.*	tu *thou* or *you*	*Plural*	*Nom.*	vōs *ye* or *you*
	Gen.	tui *if thee*		*Gen.*	vēſtrum *or* veſtri *of you*
	Dat.	tĭbi *to thee*		*Dat.*	vōbis *to you*
	Acc.	tē *thee*		*Acc.*	vōs *ye* or *you*
	Voc.	o tu *o thou*		*Voc.*	o vos *o ye*
	Abl.	tē *by thee*		*Abl.*	vōbis *by you*
Singular	*Nom.*	———	*Plural*	*Nom.*	———
	Gen.	ſui *of ones ſelf*		*Gen.*	ſui *of themſelves*
	Dat.	ſibi *to ones ſelf*		*Dat.*	ſibi *to themſelves*
	Acc.	ſe *ones ſelf*		*Acc.*	ſe *themſelves*
	Abl.	ſe *by ones ſelf*		*Abl.*	ſe *by themſelves*

434. **N. B.** Tot, quot, quatuor, *&c.* (*ſee number* 226.) *are not declined at all, and* ſatis *and* nimis, cras *and* mane *are uſed only in the* Nom. *and* Accuſ. Singular. And *usane* in the *Nom. Acc.* & *Abl.* Sing.

§. *The Declining of Adjectives.*

Q. *Are all Adjectives declined after one of theſe five Declenſions?*

435. *A.* All Adjectives are declined after the Firſt and Second Declenſion, or after the Third.

Q. *What Adjectives are of the Firſt and Second Declenſion?*

436. *A.* Adjectives in us, a, um, and er, a, um, are of the Firſt and Second Declenſion, and be thus Declined, all three Genders together.

Adjectives of the Firſt and Second Declenſions.

I. *In* us a um.

		m.	*f.*	*n.*		*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N.*	bonus	bona	bonum	*Plural*	boni	bonæ	bona
	G.	boni	bonæ	boni		bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
	D.	bono	bonæ	bono		bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
	Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum		bonōs	bonās	bona
	V.	bone	bona	bonum		boni	bonæ	bona
	Ab.	bono	bone	bono		bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

N. B. *Where*

N. B. *Where you ſee the* Maſc. *and* Neut. *are of the* Second, *and the* Fem. *of the* Firſt Decl.

So decline malus, probus, *and all in us* (*except* vetus) *and Participles in* us, *as* amand-us -a -um, amat-us -a -um, *but* meus mea meum *hath in the* Voc. Sing. mi mea meum, *and for* ſaturus *they uſe* ſatur -a -um.

II. *Adjectives in* ĕr ĕra ĕrum.

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N.*	lĭb-ĕr	-ĕra	-ĕrum
	G.	-ĕri	-ĕræ	-ĕri
	D.	-ĕro	-ĕræ	-ĕro
	Ac.	-ĕrum	-ĕram	-ĕrum
	V.	-ĕr	-ĕra	-ĕrum
	Ab.	-ĕro	-ĕra	-ĕro

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Plural	*N.*	lĭb-ĕri	-ĕræ	-ĕra
	G.	-ĕrōrum	-ĕrārum	-ĕrōrum
	D.	-ĕris	-ĕris	-ĕris
	Ac.	-ĕrōs	-ĕras	-ĕra
	V.	-ĕri	-ĕræ	-ĕra
	Ab.	-ĕris	-ĕris	-ĕris

So decline proſper, miſer, aſper, tener, dexter, ſiniſter, lacer *and* cæter.

N. B. *But ſome caſt off the ſhort* e, *and make* er ra rum, ri ræ ri, *&c.*

So decline niger, pulcer, ruber, ſacer, æger, macer, piger; *thus* niger nigra nigrum, *G.* nigri nigræ nigri, *&c.*

Q. *Are all Adjectives in* us a um *and* er a um *thus declined?*

437. *A.* There are certain Adjectives of another manner of declining in two Caſes, for they make the *Gen. Sing.* in *ius*, the *Dat.* in *i*, which be theſe *nine* that follow, ūnus, tōtus, sōlus, ullus, nullus, ălĭus, alter, uter, neuter.

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N.*	ūn-us	-a	-um
	G.	-ius	-ius	-ius
	D.	-i	-i	-i
	Ac.	-um	-am	-um
	V.	-e	-a	-um
	Ab.	-o	-a	-o, *&c.*

So decline totus, ſolus, ullus *and* nullus; *but* alius alia aliud *a little otherwiſe, thus*;

Sing.	*N.*	ali-ĭus	-a	-ud
	G.	alī-us	-īus	-īus
	D.	ali-i	-i	-i, *&c.*

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N.*	alter	ăltĕra	ăltĕrum
	G.	altĕr-ĭus	-ius	-ius
	D.	ăltĕr-i	-i	-i
	Ac.	ălter-um	-am	-um
	V.	ălter	-a	-um
	Ab.	ălter-o	-a	-o, *&c.*

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N.*	uter	utra	utrum
	G.	utrius	utrius	utrius
	D.	utri	utri	utri
	Ac.	utrum	utram	utrum, *&c.*

So *decline* neuter.

Q. *Are there any more Adjectives beſides theſe nine ſo declined?*

438. *A. Theſe Pronouns* ille, ipſe, iſte, hic, is, qui, quis *and* quid *have alſo their* Genitive Singular *in* ius, *and their* Dative *in* i.

Singular	*N.*	ille	illa	illud	iſte	iſta	iſtud	ipſe	ipſa	ipſum
	G.	illius	illius	illius	iſtius	iſtius	iſtius	ipſius	ipſius	ipſius
	D.	illi	illi	illi	iſti	iſti	iſti	ipſi	ipſi	ipſi
	Ac.	illum	illam	illud	iſtum	iſtam	iſtud	ipſum	ipſam	ipſum
	V.	———			———			———		
	Ab.	illo	illa	illo, *&c.*	iſto	iſta	iſto,	ipſo, *&c.*		

Sing.

Singular	N.	hīc	hæc	hŏc *this*	Plural	N.	hi	hæ	hæc
	G.	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus		G.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
	D.	huic	huic	huic		D.	hīs	hīs	hīs
	Ac.	hunc	hanc	hŏc		Ac.	hōs	hās	hæc
	V.	——				V.	——		
	Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc		Ab.	hīs	hīs	hīs

Singular	N.	ĭs	ĕa	ĭd	Plural	N.	ii	eæ	ea
	G.	ējus	ējus	ējus		G.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
	D.	ĕi	ei	ei		D.	eis *or* iis	eis *or* iis	eis *or* iis
	Ac.	eum	eam	id		Ac.	eōs	eās	ea
	V.	——				V.	——		
	Ab.	eō	eā	eō		Ab.	eis *or* iis, &c.		

Singular	N.	īdem	eădem	ĭdem	Plural	N.	iīdem	eædem	eădem
	G.	ējusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem		G.	eōrúndem	eārúndem	eōrúndum
	D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem		D.	eísdem *or* iisdem, *&c.*		
	Ac.	eundem	eandem	ĭdem		Ac.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eădem
	V.	ĭdem	eădem	idem		V.	iīdem	eædem	eădem
	Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem		Ab.	eísdem *or* iisdem, *&c.*		

Singular	N.	quī	quæ	quŏd	Plural	N.	qui	quæ	quæ
	G.	cūjus	cujus	cujus		G.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
	D.	cui	cui	cui		D.	quĭbus *or* quîs, *&c.*		
	Ac.	quem	quam	quod		Ac.	quōs	quās	quæ
	V.	——				V.	——		
	Ab.	quo	qua	quo		Ab.	quĭbus	quibus	quibus
	or	quî	quî	quî		*or*	quîs	quîs	quîs

So decline quidam quædam quoddam, *G.* cujuſdam, *&c. and* quis quæ quod, *G.* cujus, *&c. and* quid, *G.* cujus, *D.* cui, *Ac.* quid, *&c.*

Q. Are there yet no more Adjectives otherwiſe declined?

439. *A.* There are *two* more Adjectives yet, ambo *both* and duo *two*, which becauſe they always betoken *more than one*, therefore want the *Singular* Number, and in the *Plural* are thus declined,

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Plural	N. V.	amb-o	-æ	-o
	G.	-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum
	D.	-ōbus	-ābus	-ōbus
	Ac.	-ōs	-ās	-o
	Ab.	-ōbus	-ābus	-ōbus

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
ſo Plural	N. V.	dŭo	dŭæ	dŭo
	G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
	D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
	Ac.	duōs	duās	duo
	Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

Adjectives

Adjectives of the Third Declenſion.

Q. *Which Adjectives are of the Third Declenſion?*

440. *A.* All that are not of the Firſt and Second are of the Third; and theſe are of three ſorts.

I. *Adjectives not encreaſing.*

Q. *What Adjectives do not increaſe in the* Genitive Singular?

441. *A.* Adjectives in *is is e*, and in *er ris re* do not increaſe; as,

		m.	*f.*	*n.*			*m.*	*f.*
Singular	*N.*	triſt-is,	-is	-e	*Plural*	*N.*	triſt-es	-es
	G.	-is	-is	-is		*G.*	-ium	-ium
	D.	-i	-i	-i		*D.*	-ĭbus	-ĭbus
	Ac.	-em	-em	-e		*Ac.*	-ēs	-ēs
	V.	-is	-is	-e		*V.*	-es	-es
	Ab.	-i	-i	-i		*Ab.*	-ĭbus	-ĭbus

So decline qualis, talis, ſimilis, utilis, *and all* Adjectives *in* is, *and* Plural N. Ac. *and* V. tres tres tria, *G.* trium, *D. and* Ab. trĭbus.

Singular	*N.*	acer	acris	acre	*Plural*	*N.*	acres	acres	acria
	G.	acris	acris	acris		*G.*	ácrium	acrium	acrium
	D.	acri	acri	acri		*D.*	ácrĭbus	acribus	acribus
	Ac.	acrem	acrem	acre		*Ac.*	acres	acres	acria
	V.	acer	acris	acre		*V.*	acres	acres	acria
	Ab.	acri	acri	acri		*Ab.*	ácrĭbus	acribus	acribus

442. II. *Adjectives increaſing long.*

		m.	*f.*	*n.*			*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N. V.*	fēlix	fēlix	fēlix	*Plural*	*N. Ac. V.*	felīces	felīces	felīcia
	G.	felīcis	felīcis	felīcis		*G.*	fēlĭcĭum	felicium, *&c.*	
	D.	felīci	felīci	felīci		*D. Ab.*	fēlicĭbus	felicibus, *&c.*	
	Ac.	felīcem	felīcem	felix					
	Ab.	felīce *or* felīci, *&c.*							

So decline cujās, noſtras, veſtras -ātis, vehemens, ſapiens, frequens -entis, *and Participles in* ans *and* ens, *as* amans -antis, docens -entis.

443. N. B. Hoc plus *is a Subſtantive in the* Sing. *and an Adjective in the* Plur. *declined thus, Sing. N. Ac. V.* hoc plus, *G.* pluris, *D.* pluri, *Ab.* plure *or* pluri. *Plur. N. Ac. V.* plures plures plura, *or* pluria *G.* plurium, *D. and Ab.* plurĭbus.

444. III.

444. III. *Adjectives increaſing ſhort.*

		m.	f.	n.		m.	f.	n.
Singular	N. V.	vĕtŭs	vetus	vetus	Plural N. Ac. V.	vĕtĕres	vetĕres	vetĕra
	G.	vĕtĕris, &c.			G.	vĕtĕrum, &c.		
	D.	vĕtĕri, &c.			D. Ab.	vetĕribus, &c.		
	Ac.	vĕtĕrem	vetĕrem	vĕtŭs				
	Ab.	vĕtĕre *or* vetĕri, &c.						

So decline pār păris *and* impār impăris, ŭbĕr -is, vigil -is, hebĕs hebĕtis, dīvĕs dīvĭtis, paupĕr -is.

N. B. *Now turn back to the Chap. of* Adject. *and decline every one right.*

§. *Three Degrees of Compariſon.*

Q. *Are theſe all the ways that Adjectives are turned into other endings?*

445. *A.* Some Adjectives are yet turned into other endings in *ior* and *iſſimus*, to make compariſon between things, as that one thing is *ſuch*, another is *more ſuch*, another is *moſt ſuch*; ſo of *three* hard things, one is *hard*, another is *more hard*, a third is *hardeſt of all.*

Q. *How many Degrees of Compariſon are there?*

446. *A.* There are *three* Degrees of Compariſon; the Poſitive Degree, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

Q. *Shew me the nature of each of theſe, and how they differ?*

447. *A.* An Adjective of

1. The Poſitive Degree betokens a thing to be ſimply ſuch, as durus *hard.*
2. The Comparative betokens it to be *more* ſuch, as durior *harder* or *more hard.*
3. The Superlative betokens it to be *moſt* ſuch, as duriſſimus *hardeſt* or *moſt hard.*

N. B. *All the Adjectives that you have hitherto heard of, are of the* Poſitive *Degree, and now from it you muſt learn to form the* Comparative *and the* Superlative.

Q. *May all Adjectives form Degrees of Compariſon?*

448. *A.* No; for onely thoſe Adjectives by which we may ſay one thing is *ſuch*, another is *more ſuch*, and another is *moſt ſuch*, may form *Compariſon.*

But thoſe by which we cannot ſay one is *ſuch*, another *more ſuch*, and another *moſt ſuch*, cannot form *Compariſon*; as omnis *all*, unus *one*, for of three *ones*, we cannot ſay one is *one*, another *more* one, and another *moſt* one, *&c.*

Q. *How are the Comparative and Superlative degrees formed from the Poſitive?*

449. *A.*

449. *A.* The Poſitive is to be declined to the *Ablative Singular*, and then the *laſt Vowel* of that *Abl.* Caſe is to be turned into
{ *ior* for the Comparative,
{ *iſſimus* for the Superlative. So

Poſitive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
durus *hard*, *Ab.* dur-o	dur-ior *harder*	dur-iſſimus *hardeſt*
triſti *ſad*, *Ab.* triſt-i	triſt-ior *ſadder*	triſt-iſſimus *ſaddeſt*
felix *happy*, *Ab.* felic-e	felic-ior *happier*	felic-iſſimus *happieſt.*

Q. *Are all thus compared?*

450. *A.* No; there are *three* Exceptions.

451. I. If the Poſitive end in er the Superlative is formed from it by putting to it rĭmus, (but the Comparative is right) as

Poſ.	*Comp.*	*Superl.*			
pulcer	pulcrior	pulcérrĭmus	*fair*	*fairer*	*faireſt*
tener	tenérior	tenérrĭmus	*tender*	*tenderer*	*tendereſt.*

Q. *Which is the ſecond Exception?*

452. *A.* II. *Five* Words ending in lis make the Superlative by changing is into lĭmus, as

Poſ.	*Comp.*	*Superl.*			
húmĭlis	humílior	humíllĭmus	*humble*	*more* ——	*moſt* ——
sĭmĭlis	ſimĭlior	ſimíllimus	*like*	*liker*	*likeſt*
diſsímĭlis	diſſimílior	diſſimíllimus	*unlike*	*more* ——	*moſt* ——
facĭlis	facílior	facíllĭmus	*eaſy*	*eaſier*	*eaſieſt*
difficĭlis	difficílior	difficíllĭmus	*difficult.*	*more* ——	*moſt* ——

Q. *Which is the third Exception?*

453. *A.* From the General Rule are excepted theſe that follow,

Poſ.	*Comp.*	*Superl.*			
bonus	mélior	óptĭmus	*good*	*better*	*beſt*
malus	pejor	péſsĭmus	*bad*	*worſe*	*worſt of all*
magnus	major	máxĭmus	*great*	*greater*	*greateſt*
parvus	mĭnor	mínimus	*little*	*leſs*	*leaſt of all*
m. multus	——	plúrĭmus	*much*	*more*	*moſt*
f. multa	——	plurima			
n. multum	plus	plurimum			

N. B. *Now turn again to the* Chapter *of* Adjectives, *and* Compare *them.*

Q. *How are Comparatives and Superlatives declined?*

454. *A.* I. The Comparatives are all declined in the third Declenſion, thus;

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N.* *V.*	duri-or	duri-or	duri-us
	G.	-ōris	-ōris	-ōris
	D.	-ōri	-ōri	ōri
	Ac.	-ōrem	-ōrem	-us
	Ab.	-ōre *or* ōri, *&c.*		

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Plural	*N.* *Ac.* *V.*	-ōres	-ōres	-ōra
	G.	-ōrum	-ōrum	-ōrum
	D. *Ab.*	-ōribus, *&c.*		

II. Superlatives are declined like bonus, as duriſſim-us -a -um, G. -i -æ -i, *&c.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

The Declining of Verbs.

Q. *THus you have learned to decline Nouns, Pronouns and Participles, now tell me, Why are Verbs declined into other endings?*

455. *A.* The Verbs ſet down in Chap. VII. ſignifie barely *To be* or *To have been, To doe* or *To have done*, &c. And are *Infinite.*

But now they are to be declined into other endings to *adſignifie.*

I. The *Mood* or manner that we uſe them in.
II. The *Time* when a thing *is*, or *does*, or *ſuffers.*
III. The *Number* of them that *be*, *doe* or *ſuffer.*
IV. The *Perſon* that *is*, *does* or *ſuffers.*

} And ſo they become *Finite.*

§ 1. *Three Moods.*

Q. *How many Moods or manners in which we uſe Verbs are there?*

456. *A.* Beſides the Infinite there be *Three Moods.*

I. The *Indicative Mood*, which we uſe when we *declare* that ſomething is, does or ſuffers, as cœno *I ſup*, or *I do ſup.*

II. The *Imperative Mood*, which we uſe when we *bid* ſomething to be, to doe or to ſuffer, as cœna *ſup thou.*

III. The *Subjunctive Mood*, which we uſe to *ſubjoin* to another Verb with ut *that*, ſi *if*, *&c.* between them, as Velle ut cœnem *to deſire that I ſup.*

N. B. *The Subjunctive Mood is ſometimes Engliſhed by* may, might, can, could, would *or* ſhould.

N. B. *Theſe Moods muſt have different endings to diſtinguiſh one from another.*

§. 2. *Twice-Three Times or Tenſes.*

Q. *How many Times wherein one* is, *or* does, *or* ſuffers?

457. *A.* There be *Three Times* or *Tenſes.*

I. The *Preſent* Time, that now is.
II. The *Preter* Time, that is paſt.
III. The *Future* Time, that is yet to come.

N. B. *So ſome endings are of the Preſent Tenſe, ſome of the Preter, and ſome of the Future, and theſe are different to diſtinguiſh one* Time *from another.*

Q. *But you ſaid above, that there were* Twice-three *Tenſes.*

458. *A.* Yes, becauſe (as you heard Ch. VII. §. 6.) ſome Verbs ſignifie *Imperfectly to be a doing*, as cœnare *to ſup* or *be at ſupper*, and other *Perfectly to have done*

done it, as cœnaviſſe *to have ſupped*; therefore there are *Twice-three* Tenſes, *three* of the *Imperfect*, and *three* of the *Perfect*.

1. The *Preſent* of the *Imperfect*, as cœno *I ſup*, or am at ſupper now, but have not yet done it.

2. The *Preter* of the *Imperfect*, as cœnābam *I was at ſupper* then, but had not done it.

3. The *Future* of the *Imperfect*, as cœnābo, *I ſhall ſup*, or ſhall be at ſupper hereafter, but not that I ſhall have done it.

4. The *Preſent* of the *Perfect*, as cœnāvi *I have ſupped*, and it is *now done*.

5. The *Preter* of the *Perfect*, as cœnávĕrim *I had then ſupped*, and it was *then done*.

6. The *Future of the Perfect*, as cœnávĕro *I ſhall have ſupped*, and ſhall have *done* it.

N. B. 1. *The Preſent of the Perfect is commonly called the Preter-perfect.*

2. *And the Preter of the Perfect is commonly called the Preter-plu-perfect.*

§. 3. *Two Numbers, Singular and Plural.*

Q. *How many Numbers are there?*

459. *A.* There are *Two Numbers*, the Singular and the Plural, and ſo ſome endings of Verbs are of the Singular and ſome of the Plural, as *Sing.* Ego cœno *I ſup*, *Plur.* nos cœnāmus *we ſup*.

And theſe endings are different to diſtinguiſh the Singular from the Plural.

§ 4. *Three Perſons.*

Q. *How many Perſons are there?*

460. *A.* There be *Three* Perſons; the Firſt, the Second and the Third.

I. The Firſt Perſon is that which ſpeaketh of it ſelf, as Ego *I*, nos *we*.

II. The Second Perſon is that which is ſpoken to, as Tu *thou*, vos *ye*.

III. The Third Perſon is that which neither ſpeaketh of it ſelf, nor is ſpoken to, but is ſpoken of, as ille *he*, illi *they*, &c.

And accordingly ſome endings of Verbs are of
The Firſt Perſon, as ego cœno *I ſup*, nos cœnāmus *we ſup*,
The Second Perſon, as tu cœnas *thou ſuppeſt*, vos cœnātis *ye ſup*,
The Third Perſon, as ille cœnat *he ſups*, illi cœnant *they ſup*.

And theſe endings muſt be different to diſtinguiſh one Perſon from the other.

§. 5. *The*

§. 5. *The Conjugating of Verbs, or turning Infinite Verbs into Finite.*

Q. *As before you learned to decline a Noun in all its* Caſes, *ſo now you muſt learn to* Conjugate *or decline a Verb in all its* Perſons, *what is it then to conjugate a Verb?*

461. *A.* To *Conjugate* a Verb is to give the right ending of every Perſon in each Number of every Tenſe of every Mood.

Q. *How ſhall that be learned?*

462. *A.* You ſhall learn now to conjugate

1. Verbs in *re* } which ſignifie Imperfectly
2. Verbs in ī }
3. Verbs in *iſſe* which ſignifie Perfectly.

§. *Four Conjugations of Verbs in* re.

Q. *How many ways are Verbs in* re *declined?*

463. *A.* There are *four* ways of declining Verbs in *re* which are called the *four Conjugations*; for

Verbs in { āre are of the Firſt / ēre are of the Second / ĕre are of the Third / īre are of the Fourth } Conjugation.

Q. *What mark then hath every Conjugation to know it by?*

464 *A.* Verbs of the { First Conjugation have ā long before re, as amāre. / Second Conjugation have ē long before re, as docēre. / Third Conjugation have ĕ ſhort before re, as legĕre. / Fourth Conjugation have ī long before re, as audīre.

I. *The* First *Conjugation in* āre.

Q. *How are Verbs in* āre *declined into Finite?*

465. *A.* Verbs in āre are declined into the right ending of every Perſon in each Number, Tenſe and Mood, by changing āre into

	1 P.	2 P.	3 P.		1 P.	2 P.	3 P.		
S.	o	ās	āt	P.	āmus	ātis	ānt	*in the Preſ. Imperf.*	} *Indicative.*
S.	ābam	ābas	ābat	P.	ābāmus	ābātis	ābant	*in the Pret. Imperf.*	
S.	ābo	ābis	ābit	P.	ābĭmus	ābĭtis	ābunt	*in the Fut. Imp.*	
S.	—ā *or* āto		āto	P.	—āte *or*	ātōte	anto	*in the Future Imperat.*	
S.	ēm	ēs	ĕt	P.	ēmus	ētis	ent	*in the Preſ. Imperf.*	} *Subjunctive.*
S.	ārem	ārēs	ārĕt	P.	ārēmus	ārētis	ārent	*in the Pret. Imp.*	
S.	ēm	ēs	ĕt	P.	ēmus	ētis	ent	*in the Fut. Imp.*	

N. B. *The Future of the Subjunctive is ever the ſame with the Preſ. Subj.*

Q. *Give me an* Exemple *of Verbs in* āre *thus varied?*

466. *A.* Amare *to love*, which is thus formed.

1. In

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. Tenſ. S. amo amās amat *P.* amāmus amātis amant
I love thou — he — we love ye love they love.

Pret. Imp. S. amābam amābās amābăt. *P.* amābāmus amābātis amābant
I did love or *was a loving, thou didſt,* &c.

Fut. Tenſe S. amābo amābis amābit *P.* amābĭmus amābĭtis amābunt
I ſhall love or *I will love, thou,* &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

Fut. S.—— amā *or* amāto amāto *P.*—— amāte *or* amātote amanto
love thou let him love love ye let them love

N. B. *In the Imperative there is no Preſ. nor Pret. becauſe we can bid only for the time to come, and there is no firſt Perſon becauſe none bids himſelf, ſaying love I, but love thou.*

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. S. Si amem amēs amet *P.* amēmus amētis ament
if I love if thou—if he— if we— if ye— if they love.

Pret. Imp. S. ſi amārem amāres amāret *P.* amārēmus amārētis amārent
if I loved, if I were a loving.

Fut. S. ſi amēm amēs amĕt, *&c.* like the Preſ.
if I ſhall love.

So decline văcāre, crĕāre, formāre, mutāre, errāre, *and all in* āre.

II. *The* Second *Conjugation in* ēre.

Q. *How are Verbs in* ēre *turned into Finite?*

467. *A.* Verbs in ēre are turned into the right endings of every Perſon by changing ēre into

S. ĕo ēs ĕt *P.* ēmus ētis ent *in the Preſ.*
S. ēbam ēbas ēbat *P.* ēbāmus ēbātis ebant *in the Pret. Imperf.* } *Indicative*
S. ēbo ēbis ēbit *P.* ēbĭmus ēbĭtis ēbunt *in the Fut.*
S.——ē *or* ēto eto *P.*—— ēte *or* ētōte ento *in the Fut. of the Imperative.*
S. ĕam ĕās ĕăt *P.* eāmus eātis eant *in the Preſ.*
S. ērem ēres ēret *P.* ērēmus ērētis ērent *in the Pret. Imp.* } *Subjunctive*
S. eam eās, *like the Preſ.* *in the Fut.*

Q. *Give me an* Example *of a Verb in* ēre *thus conjugated?*

468. *A.* Docēre *to teach* is ſo formed, thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. S. dŏcĕo dŏcēs dŏcĕt *P.* docēmus docētis docent
I teach thou— he teaches we teach ye teach they teach.

Pret. Imp. S. docēbam docēbas docēbat *P.* docēbāmus docēbātis docēbant
I was a teaching, thou waſt, &c.

Fut. S. docēbo docēbis docēbit *P.* docēbĭmus docēbĭtis docēbunt
I will teach, thou wilt, &c.

2.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.—— doc̄ *or* docēto docēto *P.*—docēte *or* docētōte docento.
teach thou let him teach teach ye let them teach

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. & Fut. S. ſi doceam doceas doceat *P.* doceamus doceatis doceant
if I teach, &c.

Pret. Imp. S. ut docērem docērēs docēret *P.* docērēmus docērētis docērent
that I might teach, &c.

So decline mănēre, cărēre, ĕgēre, tĕnēre, hăbēre, *and all in* ēre.

III. *The* Third *Conjugation in* ĕre.

Q. *How are Verbs in* ĕre *turned into their right endings?*

469. *A.* Verbs in ĕre are turned into the right endings of every Perſon in every Number, Tenſe and Mood, by changing ĕre into

S. o is it *P.* ĭmus ĭtis unt *in the Preſ.*
S. ēbam ēbās ēbăt *P.* ēbāmus ēbātis ēbant *in the Pret. Imperf.* } *Indicative.*
S. am ēs ĕt *P.* ēmus ētis ent *in the Future.*
S.——ĕ *or* ĭto ĭto *P.*——ĭte *or* ĭtōte unto *in the Fut. Imperat.*
S. am ās ăt *P.* āmus ātis ant *in the Preſ.*
S. ĕrem ĕres ĕret *P.* ĕrēmus ĕrētis ĕrent *in the Pret. Imp.* } *Subjunctive.*
S. am ās, *&c.* *in the Fut.*

Q. *Give me an* Exemple *of a Verb in* ĕre *thus conjugated.*

470. *A.* Legĕre *to reade* is ſo formed, thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. S. lĕgo legis legit P. legĭmus legĭtis legunt
I do reade or *I am a reading, thou doſt reade*, &c.

Pret. Imp. S. legēbam legēbas legēbat *P.* legēbāmus legēbātis legēbant
I read, I did reade, I was a reading, &c.

Fut. S. legam leges leget *P.* legēmus legētis legent
I will reade, I ſhall be a reading.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.——legĕ *or* legĭto legĭto *P.*——legĭte *or* legĭtōte legunto
reade thou ſee he reade reade ye ſee they reade.

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. & Fut. S. ut legam legas legat *P.* legāmus legātis legant
o that I may reade, o that thou, &c.

Pret. Imp. S. cum legĕrem cum legĕres cum legĕret *S.* cum legerēmus, *&c.*
when I was a reading, when thou waſt, &c. *when we read*, &c.

So decline creſcĕre, agĕre, gerĕre, fingĕre, *and others in* ĕre.

Q. *Are all Verbs in* ĕre *thus declined in all Perſons?*

471. *A.* No, for there are three Exceptions.

Q. *Which is the firſt Exception in the Third Conjugation?*

472. *A.* Exc. I. Fer're (*for* ferĕre) *to bear*, in ſome Perſons loſes a Letter thus.

N. B. *And do you tell me what Letter it is, and where, and which Perſon are right.*

Indic. { *Preſ. S.* fero fer's fer't *P.* ferĭmus fer'tis ferunt. *I bear, thou,* &c.
Pret. Imp. S. ferēbam -bas -bat *P.* bāmus -bātis -bant *I bore, thou,* &c.
Fut. S. feram feres feret P. ferēmus ferētis ferent, *I will bear,* &c.

Imperat S.——fer' *or* fer'to fer'to *P.* fer'te *or* fer'tōte ferunto. *Bear thou,* &c.

Sub-junct. { *Preſ. S.* ſi feram feras ferat *P.* feramus feratis ferant. *If I bear,* &c.
Pret. Imp. S. cum fer'rem -res -ret. *P.* rēmus -rētis -rent. *When I bore,* &c.

Q. *Which is the ſecond Exception in the third Conjugation?*

473. *A.* Exc. II. As fer is uſed for fere, ſo inſtead of dīce, dūce, făce, in the ſecond Perſon Singular of the Imperat. they uſe dīc, dūc, făc, caſting off the ĕ.

Q. *Which is the third Exception?*

474. *A.* Exc. III. For volĕre they uſe velle *to will, to be willing, to deſire*; and it hath two Compounds.

{ Nolle (*from* non *and* velle) *to be unwilling, to nill, to refuſe.*
{ Malle (*from* magis *and* velle) *to be more willing, to have rather, to chuſe.*

And theſe three are declined wrong in four Tenſes, but in the reſt right, thus:

Indicative.

Preſ.	vŏlo	vīs	vult	*Pl.* volŭmus	vultis	volunt,
	I will	*thou wilt*	*he will*	*we will*	*ye will*	*they will*
Sing.	nōlo	-nonvis	nonvult	*Pl.* nōlŭmus	nonvultis	nolunt
	mālo	māvis	mavult	*Pl.* mālŭmus	mavultis	malunt
Pret. Imp. Sing.	volebam volebas volebat, &c. *I was willing*					
	nolebam nolebas, &c. *I was unwilling*					
	malebam malebas, &c. *I was rather willing*					
Fut. Sing.	volam voles volet, *P.* volēmus volētis volent. *I ſhall be willing*					
	nolam noles, &c.					
	malam males, &c.					

Imperative.

{ velle *and* malle *have no Imperative.*
{ nolī *or* nolito *refuſe thou, don't thou.* *P.* nolīte *or* nolitōte *don't ye.*

Subjunctive.

Preſ. S. ſi	velim	velīs	velĭt	*P.* velīmus	velītis	velint *if I be willing,* &c.
	nolim	nolīs	nolĭt	*P.* nolīmus	nolītis	nolint *if I refuſe,* &c.
	malim	malīs	malĭt	*P.* malīmus	malītis	malint *if I ſhould chuſe,* &c.
Pret. Imp. S. ſi.	vellem	vellēs	vellet	*P.* vellēmus	-ētis	-ent *if I were willing,* &c.
	nollem	noll-ēs	-et	*P.* -ēmus	-ētis	-ent *if I would not,* &c.
	mallem	mallēs	mallet	*P.* -ēmus	-ētis	-ent *if I had rather,* &c.

IV. *The*

IV. *The* Fourth *Conjugation in* ire.

Q. *How are Verbs in* ire *conjugated in every Perſon?*

475. *A.* Verbs in ire are turned into the right endings of every Perſon by changing ire into

S. ĭo	is	ĭt	*P.* īmus	ītis	iunt	*in the Preſ.*	}	*Indicative.*
S. iēbam	iēbas	iēbat	*P.* iēbāmus	iēbātis	iēbant	*in the Pret. Imp.*		
S. ĭam	ĭēs	ĭĕt	*P.* iēmus	iētis	ient	*in the Fut.*		
S.— ī *or* īto		īto	*P.*— īte *or* ītōte		iunto	*in the Future Imperative.*		
S. ĭam	iās	iat	*P.* iāmus	iātis	iant	*in the Preſ.*	}	*Subjunct.*
S. īrem	īres	īret	*P.* īrēmus	īrētis	īrent	*in the Pret. Imp.*		
S. ĭam	iās	iăt, *&c. as in the Preſ.*				*in the Future.*		

Q. *Give me an* Example *of a Verb in* ire *ſo declined.*

476. *A.* Audīre *to hear* is ſo declined, thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. S. audĭo audīs audĭt *P.* audīmus audītis audiunt
I do hear thou doſt— he— we do hear ye— they do hear.

Pret. Imp. S. audiēbam audiēbas audiēbat *P.* audiēbāmus audiēbātis audiēbant
I heard, I was a hearing, &c.

Fut. S. audĭam audĭēs audĭet *P.* audĭēmus audiētis audient
I ſhall or will hear, thou ſhalt, &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.—a udī *or* audīto audīto *P.*—audīte *or* audītōte audiunto
hear thou let him hear hear ye let them hear.

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. & *Fut.* } *S.* ſi audĭam ſi audĭās ſi audĭăt *P.* ſi audiāmus -atis -ant
if I ſhould hear, if thou ſhouldeſt hear, &c.

Pret. Imp. } *S.* cum audīrem audīres audīret *P.* audīrēmus audīrētis audīrent
when I heard or *was a hearing, when thou,* &c.

So decline finire, venire, ſalire, fulcire, farcire, *and the reſt in* ire.

Q. *Are all Verbs of the* Fourth *Conjugation thus declined?*

477. *A.* No, there are *two Exceptions*: for,

478. Exc. I. *Inſtead of* fire *they uſe* fĭĕri *to become, which in the* Preter Imp. Subj. *hath* fĭĕrem, *elſewhere it is declined right.*

479. II. Ire *to go, and* quire *to be able, are in ſome places Wrong, thus:*

Indicat.
Preſ. S. eo īs ĭt *P.* īmus ītis eunt. *I go, thou goeſt, he goes,* &c.
Pret. Imp. S. ībam ības ībat *P.* ībāmus ībātis ibant *I was a going,* &c.
Fut. S. ĭbo ĭbis ĭbit *P.* ĭbĭmus ĭbĭtis ibunt. *I will go,* &c.

Imperat. S.— ī *or* īto īto *P.*— īte *or* ītōte eunto. *Go thou,* &c.

Sub-junct. } *Preſ. & Fut. S.* ſi eam eas eat *P.* eāmus eātis eant. *If I would go,* &c.
Pret. Imp. S. ſi īrem īres īret *P.* īrēmus īrētis irent. *If I went,* &c.

So decline quire.

N.B. *The Participles are* iens, *G.* euntis, *and* eundus *for* iendus.

Q. *Thus you have ſeen the Four Conjugation or ways of Declining Verbs in* re, *now tell me, are there no Verbs in* re *but what are declined after one of theſe four ways.*

480. *A.* There are *twelve* Verbs that are of *two* Conjugations.

§. *Twelve Verbs partly of the* III. *and partly of the* IV. *Conjugation.*

Q. *Which are thoſe* twelve ?

481. *A.* Theſe *twelve* făcĕre, jăcĕre, lăcĕre, ſpĕcĕre, fŏdĕre, fŭgĕre, căpĕre, răpĕre, săpĕre, cŭpĕre, părĕre, quătĕre, take in an *i* in moſt places, and ſo are partly of the Third Conjugation, aud partly of the Fourth, and are declined thus by changing ĕre into

S. ĭo 4	ĭs 3	it 3.	*P.* ĭmus 3	ĭtis 3	iunt 4	*in the Preſ.*	*Indicativ.*
S. iēbam	iēbas	iēbat	*P.* iēbāmus	iēbatis	iēbant 4	*in Pret. Imp.*	
S. ĭam	ĭēs	ĭĕt	*P.* iēmus	iētis	iēnt 4	*in the Fut.*	
S.—ĕ *or* ĭto 3	ĭto 3		*P.*—ĭte *or* ĭtōte 3.		iunto 4	*in the Imperative.*	
S. ĭam	ias	iat	*P.* iāmus	iātis	iant 4	*in the Preſ.*	*Subjunct.*
S. ĕrem	ĕres	ĕret	*P.* ĕrēmus	ĕrētis	erent 3	*in Pret. Imp.*	
S. ĭam	iās	iat	*P.* iāmus	iātis	iant 4	*in the Fut.*	

So făcĕre *to doe* is formed thus.

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. S. facio facis facit *P.* facĭmus facĭtis faciunt
I do thou doeſt he does we do ye do they do.
Pret. Imp. S. faciēbam faciēbas, &c. *I was a doing, thou waſt,* &c.
Fut. S. faciam facies faciet P. faciēmus, &c. *I will do,* &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.—face *or* făc *or* facĭto facĭto *P.* facĭte *or* facĭtōte faciunto. *Do thou,* &c.

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. and Fut. S. cum faciam facias faciat *P.* faciāmus, &c. *When I ſhall do,* &c.
Pret Imp. S. cum facĕrem facĕres facĕret P. facerēmus, &c. *When I was doing,* &c.
So deeline the other eleven, and all their Compounds, and theſe have their Participles in iens, *as* faciens, jaciens, capiens, &c. and in *iendus.*

§. *Four Conjugations of Verbs in* i.

Q. *Thus for Verbs in* re, *now how many ways are Verbs in* i *Conjugated ?*

482. *A.* There are alſo *four* Conjugations of Verbs in *i* ; for

Verbs in { āri are of the Firſt / ēri are of the Second / i are of the Third / īri are of the Fourth } Conjugation.

Q. *Wha*

Q. *What mark is there to know Verbs of one Conjugation from Verbs of another?*

483. *A.* Verbs of the { First Conjugation have ā long before ri, as amāri. / Second Conjugation have ē long before ri, as docēri. / Third Conjugation have i and not ĕri, as legi. / Fourth Conjugation have ī long before ri, as audīri.

I. *The* First *Conjugation in* āri.

Q. *How are Verbs in* āri *made Finite, and turned into the right endings?*

484. *A.* Verbs in āri are declined into the right endings of every Perſon in each Number, of every Tenſe, and every Mood, by changing āri into

	1 P.	2 P.	3 P.		1 P.	2 P.	3 P.	
S.	ŏr	āris *or* āre	ātur	P.	āmur	āmĭni	antur	*Preſ.*
S.	ābar	ābāris *or* ābāre	ābātur	P.	ābāmur	ābāmĭni	ābantur	*Pret. Imp.*
S.	ābŏr	ābĕris *or* ābĕre	ābĭtur	P.	ābĭmur	ābĭmĭni	ābuntur	*Fut.*
S.	——	āre *or* ātor	ātor	P.	—āmĭni *or* āmĭnor		antor	*in Imper.*
S.	ĕr	ēris *or* ēre	ētur	P.	ēmur	ēmĭni	entur	*Preſ.*
S.	ārer	ārēris *or* ārēre	ārētur	P.	ārēmur	ārēmĭni	ārentur	*Pret. Imp.*
S.	ĕr	ēris *or* ēre	ētur	P.	ēmur	ēmĭni	entur	*Fut.*

Indicat. / *Subj.*

Q. *Give me an* Exemple *of a Verb in* āri *ſo declined?*

485. *A.* Amāri *to be loved* is ſo declined, thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. S. amŏr amāris *or* amāre amātur *P.* amāmur amāmĭni amantur
I am loved thou art loved he is loved we are—ye—they are—

Pret. Imp. S. amābăr -āris *or* āre -ātur *P.* -āmur -āmini -antur
I was loved thou waſt loved he was—we—ye—they—

Fut. S. amāb-ŏr -ĕris *or* ĕre -ĭtur *P.* -ĭmur ĭmini -untur
I ſhall be loved, thou ſhalt, &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S. ——amāre *or* amātor amātor *P.*——amāmĭni *or* amāmĭnor amantor
be thou loved let him be loved be ye loved let them be—

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. & Fut. } *S.* ſi amer amēris *or* amēre amētur *P.* amēmur amēmĭni amentur
if I be loved, if thou, &c.

Pret. Imp. } *S.* cum amār-er -ēris *or* -ēre -ētur *P.* -emur -emini -entur
when I was loved, when thou, &c.

So decline creāri, formāri, damnāri *and all* Paſſives *in* āri. *And* Deponents *in* āri, *but Engliſh them* Actively, *as* venāri *to hunt,* conāri *to endeavour,* &c.

II. *The* Second *Conjugation in* ēri.

Q. *How are Verbs in* ēri *Conjugated aright?*

486. *A.* Verbs in ēri are turned into the right endings of each Perſon thus, by changing ēri into

S. ĕŏr	ēris *or* ēre	ētur	*P.* ēmur	ēmĭni	entur	*in the Preſ.*	*Indicat.*
S. ēbăr	ēbāris *or* ēbāre	ēbātur	*P.* ēbāmur	ēbāmini	ēbantur	*Pret. Imp.*	
S. ēbŏr	ēbĕris *or* ēbĕre	ēbĭtur	*P.* ēbĭmur	ēbĭmĭni	ēbuntur	*in the Fut.*	
S. —	ēre *or* ētor	ētor	*P.* —	ēmĭni *or* ēmĭnor	entor	*in the Imperat.*	
S. ĕăr	eāris *or* eāre	eātur	*P.* eāmur	eāmĭni	eantur	*In the Preſ.*	*Subj.*
S. ērer	ērēris *or* ērēre	ērētur	*P.* ērēmur	ērēmĭni	ērentur	*Pret. Imp.*	
S. ear	eāris *or* eāre, *like the Preſ.*					*in the Fut.*	

Q. *Give me an* Exemple *of a Verb in* ēri *ſo declined?*

487. *A.* Docēri *to be taught* is ſo Conjugated, as thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. S. dŏcĕŏr docēris *or* docēre docētur *P.* docēmur docēmĭni dŏcentur
I am taught, i. e. *now a teaching, thou art*, &c.

Pret. Imp. *S.* docēb-ar -āris *or* -āre -ātur *P.* -āmur -āmĭni -antur
I was taught or *a teaching, thou waſt a teaching*, &c.

Fut. S. docēb-or -ēris *or* -ēre -ĭtur *P.* -ĭmur -ĭmini -untur
I ſhall be taught, thou ſhalt, &c.

2. In the Imperative.

S. — docēre *or* docētor docētor *P.* — docēmĭni *or* docēmĭnor docentor
be thou taught let him be taught be ye taught let them be —

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. & Fut. *S.* ut docĕ-ar -āris *or* āre -ātur *P.* -āmur -āmĭni -antur
that I may be taught, that thou — *that he* —, &c.

Pret. Imp. *S.* cum docērer cum docērēris *or* docērēre cum docērētur, &c.
while I was a teaching, while thou wert, &c. i. e. *in being taught.*

So decline tenēri, habēri, monēri, *and other* Paſſives *in* ēri, *and ſo Engliſh them. And* Deponents *in* ēri, *but Engliſh them* Actively, verēri *to dread*, tuēri *to behold*, rēri *to think*, &c.

III. *The* Third *Conjugation in* i.

Q. *How are Verbs in* i *of the Third Conjugation Declined?*

488. *A.* Verbs in *i* of the third Conjugation are turned into their right Perſons, by changing *i* into

S. ŏr	ĕris *or* ĕre	ĭtur	*P.* ĭmur	ĭmĭni	untur	*in the Preſ.*	*Indicat.*
S. ēbar	ēbāris *or* ēbāre	ēbātur	*P.* ēbāmur	ēbāmini	ēbantur	*Pret. Imp.*	
S. ar	ēris *or* ēre	ētur	*P.* ēmur	ēmĭni	entur	*in the Fut.*	
S. ——	ĕre *or* ĭtor	ĭtor	*P.* —	ĭmĭni *or* ĭmĭnor	untor	*in the Imperat.*	

S. ar

S. ar āris *or* āre ātur P. āmur āmĭni antur *in the Preſ.* } *Ind.*
S. ĕrer ĕrēris *or* ĕrēre ĕrētur P. ĕrēmur ĕrēmini ĕrentur *Pret. Imp.* } *Ind.*
S. ar āris *or* āre ātur P. āmur āmĭni āntur *in the Fut.* } *Ind.*

Q. *Give me an* Exemple *of a Verb in* i *ſo declined?*

489. *A.* Legi *to be read* is ſo conjugated, as thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. S. legor legĕris *or* legĕre legĭtur P. legĭmur legĭmĭni leguntur
I am read or *I am now a reading, thou art,* &c.

Pret. Imp. S. legēbar legēbāris *or* legēbāre legēbātur P. legēbāmur, &c.
I was read or *I was a reading,* i. e. *in being read.*

Fut. S. legar legēris *or* legēre legētur P. legēmur legēmĭni legentur
I ſhall be read, thou ſhalt, &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.—— legĕre *or* legĭtor legĭtor P.——legĭmĭni *or* legĭmĭnor leguntor
be thou read let him be read be ye read let them be read.

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. & Fut. S. ſi legar legāris *or* legāre legātur P. legāmur legāmĭni legantur
if I be read, if thou beeſt, &c.

Pret. Imp. S. cum legĕrer legĕrēris *or* legĕrēre legĕrētur P. legĕrēmur, &c.
when I was read or *a reading,* i. e. *in being read.*

So decline emi, vendi, agi, fundi, *and all* Paſſives *in* i.

490. *And ſo decline the* Deponents *in* i, *but Engliſh them* Actively, *as* fungi *to diſcharge,* frui *to enjoy,* uti, *to uſe,* &c.

Q. *Are all Verbs in* i *of the Third Conjugation thus declined?*

491. *A.* There is one Verb fĕrri *to be born,* that loſes a Letter in ſome Perſons; as,

Indic.
Preſ. S. feror fer'ris *or* fer're fer'tur P. ferĭmur ferĭmĭni feruntur
Pret. Imp. S. ferēbar ferēbāris *or* ferēbāre ferēbātur, &c.
Fut. S. ferar ferēris *or* ferēre ferētur P. ferēmur, &c.

Imp. Fut. S.— fer're *or* fer'tor fer'tor P.— ferĭmĭni *or* ferĭmĭnor feruntor
Subj. Preſ. & Fut. S. ſi ferar ferāris *or* ferāre ferātur P. ferāmur, &c.
Subj. Pret. Imp. S. ſi fer'rer fer'rēris *or* fer'rēre fer'rētur, &c.

IV. *The* Fourth *Conjugation in* īri.

Q. *How are Verbs of the* Fourth Conjugation *in* īri *declined?*

492. *A.* Verbs in īri are turned into the right endings of every Perſon by changing īri into

S. ĭor īris *or* īre ītur P. īmur īmĭni iuntur *in Preſ.* } *Indic.*
S. iēbar iēbāris *or* iēbāre iēbātur P. iēbām-ur -mĭni -ntur *in Pret.* } *Indic.*
S. iar iēris *or* iēre iētur P. iēmur iēmĭni ientur *in Fut.* } *Indic.*

S.— īre or ītor ītor P.— īmĭni or īmĭnor iuntor *in the Imper.*
S. iar iāris or iāre iātur P. iāmur iāmĭni iantur *in Pref.* } *Subj.*
S. īrer īrēris or īrēre īrētur P. īrēmur īrēmĭni īrentur *Pr. Im.*
S. iar iāris, &c. *in Fut* }

Q. *Give me an* Example *of a Verb in* īri *ſo declined?*

493. *A.* Audīri *to be heard* is ſo formed, as thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Pref. S. audĭŏr audīris *or* audīre audītur P. audīmur audīmĭni audiuntur
I am heard thou art heard he is heard we are— ye are— they are—
Pret. } S. audiēb-ar -āris *or* -āre -ātur P. -āmur -āmini -antur
Imp. } *I was heard,* i. e. *in being heard, thou waſt heard,* &c.
Fut. S. audiar audiēr-is *or* -e audiētur P. audiēmur audiēmĭni audientur
I ſhall be heard, thou ſhalt, &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.— audīre *or* audītor audītor P. audīmĭni *or* audīmĭnor audiuntor
be thou heard, let him, &c.

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Pref. & *Fut.* } S. ſi audiar audiāris *or* audiāre audiātur P. audiāmur, &c.
if I be heard, if thou, &c.
Pret. } S. ſi audīrer audīrēris *or* audīrēre audīrētur, &c.
Imp. } *if I were heard,* &c.

So decline finīri, puniri, hauriri, *and all* Paſſives *in* īri; *and* Deponents, *but Engliſh them* Actively, *as* metīri *to meaſure,* mentīri *to lye,* ordīri *to begin,* &c.

Q. *Are all Verbs in* i *declined after one of theſe* Four *Conjugations?*

494. *A.* No, for there are two ſorts that are of two Conjugations.

Fifteen Verbs in i *partly of the Third and partly of the Fourth.*

Q. *Which is the firſt ſort?*

495. *A. There are* 15 *Verbs in* i, grădi, mŏri, păti, *and the* Paſſives *of thoſe* 12 *ſet down numb.* 481. *that ſhould be of the* Third Conjugation, *but in ſome places take in an* i, *and are of the* fourth, *thus:*

S. ior 4 ĕris *or* ĕre 3 ĭtur 3 P. ĭmur 3 ĭmini 3 iuntur 4 *Pref.*
S. iēbar iēbāris *or* iēbāre iēbātur P. iēbāmur iēbāmĭni iēbantur 4 *Pret.* } *Indic.*
S. iar iēris *or* iēre iētur P. iēmur, &c. 4 *in the Fut.*
S. —— ĕre *or* ĭtor ĭtor 3 P—ĭmĭni *or* ĭmĭnor 3 iuntor 4 *in Imper.*
S. iar iāris *or* iāre iātur P. iāmur, &c. 4 *in the Pref.* } *Subj.*
S. ĕrer ĕrēris *or* ĕrēre ĕrētur P. ĕrēmur, &c. 3. *in the Pret.*

N. B. *And theſe make their* Participles *in* iens *and* iendus 4 *as* grădiens *going,* moriens *dying,* capiendus *to be taken,* &c.

Q. *Which is the ſecond ſort?*

496. *A.* Orīri *and* pŏtīri *ſhould be of the* fourth Conjugation *only, but they are declined partly in the* third *and partly in the* fourth, *as thoſe before,* orior orĕris *or* orĕre orĭtur, potĕrer poterēris, &c.

§. The

§. *The Declining of Verbs in* isse.

Q. *Having Conjugated Verbs in* re *and* i, *that all ſignifie* Imperfectly, *now tell how are Verbs in* isse *that ſignifie* Perfectly *Conjugated?*

497. *A.* Infinite Verbs in *isse* are made Finite thus, by changing *isse* into

S. i isti it P. imus istis erunt *or* ere *in the Pret. Perf.*
S. eram erās erat P. erāmus erātis erant *in the Preterpluperf.*
S. ero eris erit P. erimus eritis erint *in the Fut. Perf.*
} *Indic.*

N. B. *Verbs in* isse *have no* Imperative, *for you can't* command *a thing* to have done.

S. erim eris erit P. erimus eritis erint *in the Pret. Perf.*
S. issem isses isset P. issemus issetis issent *in Pret. pluperf.*
S. ero eris erit P. erimus eritis erint *in Fut. Perf.*
} *Subj.*

N. B. *The* Fut. Perfect Subj. *is the ſame with the* Fut. Perf. Indic.

Q. *Give me an Example of a Verb in* isse *ſo declined?*

498. *A.* Legisse *to have read* is ſo declined, as thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Pret. Perf. S. legi legisti legit P. legimus legistis legerunt *or* legere
I have read, thou haſt read, &c.

Preter pluperf. S. legeram legeras legerat P. leger-āmus -ātis -ant
I had then read, thou hadſt read, &c.

Fut. Perf. S. legero legeris legerit P. legerimus legeritis legerint
I ſhall have read thou ſhalt have read, &c.

2. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Pret. Perf. S. ſi legerim legeris legerit P. legerimus legeritis legerint
if I have read if thou, &c.

Preter pluperf. S. cum legisſem legiſſ-es -et P. -emus -etis -ent
when I had read when thou, &c.

Fut Perf. S. cum legero legeris legerit P. leger-imus -itis -int
when I ſhall have read, and done it.

So *decline* amaviſſe, amavi amaviſti, &c. amaver-am -as -at, &c. docuiſſe, docui docuiſti, &c. docueram, &c. docuero, &c. docuerim, &c. audiv-iſſe, -i -iſti, &c. -eram, &c. -ero, &c. -erim, &c. -iſſem, &c. and all Verbs Infinite in *isse*.

499. N. B. Cœpiſſe, odiſſe *and* meminiſſe, *having no* Imperfects, *are onely declined thus*; *but* memento *remember thou, and* mementote *remember ye, is uſed in the* Imperative.

The Declining Eſſe *and* Poſſe.

Q. *Have we now done with Conjugating Verbs and learned all?*

500. *A.* There remains yet *one* Verb Eſſe and its Compounds poteſſe *or* poſſe (from potis *able* and eſſe *to be*) *&c.* which are declined in a way by themſelves thus,

From eſſe *to be* and poſſe *to be able* are formed

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. S. Sum ĕs eſt *P.* sŭmus eſtis ſunt
I am thou art he is we are ye are they are.

So poſſum potĕs poteſt *P.* poſsŭmus poteſtis poſſunt *I am able*, &c.

Pret. Imp. *S.* ĕram ĕras ĕrat *P.* erāmus erātis erant
I was thou waſt he was we were ye were they were

ſo potĕram potĕras potĕrat *P.* potĕrāmus, &c. *I was able*, &c.

Fut. S. ĕro ĕris ĕrit *P.* ĕrĭmus ĕrĭtis ĕrunt
I ſhall be thou— he— we ſhall be ye— they—

ſo potĕro potĕris potĕrit *P.* potĕr-ĭmus -ĭtis -unt *I ſhall be able*, &c.

2. In the Imparative Mood.

S.— ĕs *or* eſto eſto *P.*— eſte *or* eſtōte ſunto
be thou let him be be ye let them be.

N. B. Poſſe *hath no* Imperat. *for we don't uſe to bid one* be able.

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. & Fut. *S.* ſi ſim ſi sīs ſi sīt *P.* ſi sīmus ſi sītis ſi ſint
If I may be if thou—&c.

ſo ſi poſſ-im -īs -it *P.* -īmus -ītis -int *if I be able*, &c.

Pret. Imp. *S.* ſi eſſem ſi eſsēs ſi eſſet *P.* ſi eſsēmus ſi eſsētis ſi eſſent
if I were if thou wert, &c.

ſo ſi poſſem poſsēs poſset *P.* poſsēmus poſsētis poſsent *if I were able*, &c.

And thus you have learned to decline all declinable Words.

N. B. *In theſe things the Learner muſt be ſo long exerciſed by daily repetitions, examination*, &c. *till he can without heſitation give any Word in any Caſe, Perſon, Tenſe*, &c. *that you ſhall call for in an hundred inſtances, and then let him proceed to* Sentences, *and he will preſently do them to admiration.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Sentences and Phraſes.

Q. *NOW that you have learned the Eight ſorts of Words, and how to decline* Nouns, Pronouns, Verbs *and* Participles, *tell me what is to be done with theſe* Words?

501. *A.* The uſe of Words is to make Sayings or Sentences.

Q. *What is a* Saying *or* Sentence?

502. *A.* A Sentence is ſo many Words as expreſs our meaning ſo, that he that hears it can underſtand our mind thereby.

Q. *How many Words go to the making of a Sentence?*

503. *A.* 1. Sometimes *one* Word makes a Sentence, as *Ah! Alas! Fie!*

2. Sometimes *two*; as, *Maſters teach. Boys learn. Time haſtens.*

3. Some Sentences are made of *three* Words; as, *Life is ſhort. Death will come.*

4. Some of *four*; as, *Goodneſs alone giveth honour. Diligence makes the Scholar. Good Children are Dutifull.*

5. Sometimes *five* Words make a Sentence; as, *Idleneſs keeps fools in ignorance. Bad Teachers make bad Scholars.*

6. Sometimes *ſix*, ſometimes *ſeven*, ſometimes *eight*, ſometimes *nine*, &c.

Q. *If there be but* one *Word in a ſaying, What Word is that?*

504. *A.* If there be but *one* Word in a Sentence it is an *Interjection*, for no other Word but *it* can *alone* expreſs the meaning of ones mind.

Thus when we would expreſs that we

would have one attend, we ſay, O! *or* Eho! *or* Heus! O! *Ho! Soho!*
would have one come to us, we ſay Ehodum! *or* Heus! *Soho!*
would have a thing taken out of our ſight, we ſay Apage! *Out! Away!*
would have ſilence made, we ſay St! *or* Au! *Whiſt! Huſh! Peace!*
would ſhew ſomething to be obſerved, we ſay En! *or* Ecce! *Lo! Behold!*
are ſurprized with wonder, we ſay Vah! *or* Papæ! *Strange! Heigh!*
account an act bravely done, we ſay Eu! Euge! *or* Evax! O *brave! Well!*
account it mean and ſlight it, we ſay Hui! *or* Vah! *or* Phy! *Fie! Piſh!*
are deeply affected, we ſay O! O! *or* Ah! *Ah!*
account the caſe pitious, we ſay Hei! *or* Heu! *or* Eheu! *Ah! Alas! Alack!*
denounce woe to any, we ſay Hei! *or* Væ! *Woe! Wailaday!*

505. N. B. *So that to expreſs any thought that may be expreſſed by onely an* Interjection, *you may uſe an Interjection alone.*

Q. *What if there be more Words than one, How muſt they be put together to make* Sentences?

506. *A.* Every Word is to be joined to ſome other Word in the Sentence, and to be rightly joined: and theſe two Words are called a *Phraſe.*

Q. *What*

Q. *What then is a* Phrase?

507. *A.* A *Phrase* is two Words put rightly together towards making a Sentence, as the best speakers have used to doe; as,

I am, thou art, he is, *not* I art, thou is, he am.

I love, thou lovest, he loveth, *not* I loveth, thou love, he lovest, *&c.*

Q. *How may a Learner know how to put Words rightly together as they did?*

508. *A.* To teach you that, here shall all along be set down

I. **Examples** shewing how the best Speakers put words together.

II. **Rules** directing you to *imitate* them.

III. **Exercises** for your imitation of those *Examples* by the direction of these *Rules*.

N. B. *And these three shall be full, plain and easie, and in the natural order, so that you shall be taught the* first *motion in speaking* first, *and the* second second, *and the* third third, &c. *and your way shall be made so* clear, *and your directions so* true, *and all impediments so removed, that you cannot fail to make any Sentence right, if you will take heed.*

Q. *How many such motions are to be made for making any Sentence?*

509. *A.* There are to be made XIII *motions*, which will make XIII *Phrases*.

§. 1. The First Phrase.

Q. *Which is the first motion towards making a Sentence?*

510. *A.* The first *step* is to call on that thing which we speak to, as *O Father! O Master! Soho Thomas!*

Q. *Which are the* two words *to be put together in this first Phrase?*

511. *A.* The I. is an Interjection of *calling*, as O, eho, heus.

The II. is a Substantive of the Vocative Case, as Pater! Domine!

Q. *Give me some* **Examples** *how the Latins used to put these together?*

512. *A.* As,

O filia!	*O daughter!*	Eho Adāme!	*Soho Adam!* Heus pater! *Ho father!*
O anima!	*O soul!*	Io puer!	*Oh boy!* Heus mater! *Ho mother!*

Q. *What is the* RULE *to direct us to make the like?*

513. *A.* Whensoever any thing is to be *called upon*

First use an Interjection of *calling*, O! Io! Eho! Heus!

Then put to it the Name of the *Thing called upon* in the Vocative Case.

Q. *What are the* **Exercises** *for* **Imitation** *of this Phrase?*

514. *A.*

I. *Dec. Sin.*	O Anna!	*O Mary!*
	O Catharīna!	*O Barbara!*
	O Elizabētha!	*O Joan!*
	Heus Thomā!	*O Luke!*
I. *Dec. Pl.*	Io silvæ!	*O stars!*
	O domĭnæ!	*O Churches!*
	O femĭnæ!	*O Queens!*
	Heus ancillæ!	*Ho girls!*

N. B.

N. B. *The* Latin *Exemples are to be turned into* Engliſh *and the* Engliſh *in-to* Latin.

I. Decl. Sing.	O Abrahāme!	O *Benjamin!*	II. Decl. Plur.	O Angĕli!	O *lords!*
	O Henrīce!	O *James!*		O cŏqui!	O *boys!*
	O Paule!	O *Peter!*		O viri!	O *Prieſts!*
	O Geórgi!	O *ſon!*		O filii!	O *minds!*
	O puer!	O *prieſt!*		O magiſtri!	O *ſervitors!*
	O cœlum!	O *temple!*		O palātia!	O *Kingdoms!*
III. Dec. S.	O Daniel!	O *Samuel!*	III. Dec. P.	O patres!	O *mothers!*
	O sōl!	O *man!*		O ſorōres!	O *brothers!*
	O latro!	O *thief!*		O cīves!	O *Kings!*
	O judex!	O *leader!*		O procĕres!	O *ſouldiers!*

IV. D. S.	O ſpiritus!	IV. D. P. O *ſpirits!*	V. D. S.	O facies!	V. D. P. O *faces!*
	O domus!	O *houſes!*		O res!	O *things!*
	O magiſtrātus!	O *magiſtrates!*		O dies!	O *days!*

N. B. *And this is the onely uſe of the* Voc. Caſe, *to denote the* thing called.

§. 2. *The* Second Phaſe.

Q. *Having called on the thing to hear us, what is next to be done?*

515. *A.* The next *ſtep* is to tell *what thing is, does,* or *is done,* as *I am, Thou loveſt, A book is read.*

Q. *What are the two Words in the ſecond Phraſe?*

516 *A.* The firſt Word is a Subſtantive of the *Nom.* Caſe; as, *I, thou, a book.* The ſecond is a Verb finite, as *Am, Loveſt, Is read.*

Q. *How may I certainly know which Word is to be the* Nominative *Caſe?*

517. *A.* Firſt find out the *Verb* Finite, and then ask *who* is? *who* does? or *who* ſuffers? or *what* is? *what* does? or *what* ſuffers? and the Word that anſwers it is always of the Nominative Caſe, as in *I am,* who is? *I,* that's the N. C. in *Thou loveſt,* who loves? *Thou,* that's the N. C. in *The book is read,* what is read? *The book,* that's the N. C.

Q. *Give me ſome* Exemples *how the Latins uſed to put theſe together?*

Sing. 1.	Ego ſum *I am*	Ego amo *I love*	Ego amor *I am loved*
2.	Tu es *thou art*	Tu amas *thou loveſt*	Tu amāris *thou art loved*
3.	Ille eſt *he is*	Ille amat *he loves*	Ille amātur *he is loved*
Plur. 1.	Nos ſumus *we are*	Nos amamus *we love*	Nos amāmur *we are loved*
2.	Vos eſtis *ye are*	Vos amatis *ye love*	Vos amamini *ye are loved*
3.	Illi ſunt *they are*	Illi amant *they love*	Illi amantur *they are loved*

Q. *Why is the Verb to every Nominative Caſe changed ſo?*

518. *A.* Becauſe of whatever Number or Perſon the Nom. Caſe is ſtill the Verb muſt be put into the ſame to agree with it, ſo that

If

If the N. be { of the *Sing.* Number, the Verb muſt be of the *Sing.* N. too.
of the *Plur.* Number, the Verb muſt be of the *Plur.* N. too.
of the *firſt* Perſon, the Verb muſt be of the *firſt* Perſon too.
of the *ſecond* Perſon, the Verb muſt be of the *ſecond* Perſon too.
of the *third* Perſon, the Verb muſt be of the *third* Perſon too.

N.B. 1. { Ego *is the Nominative of the* firſt *Perſon Singular.*
Nos *is the Nominative of the* firſt *Perſon Plural.*
2. { Tu *is the Nominative of the* ſecond *Perſon Singular.*
Vos *is the Nominative of the* ſecond *Perſon Plural.*
3. { *All other Nom. Caſes when ſpo-* } *Singular if* one *be meant.*
ken of, are of the third *Perſon* } *Plural if* more *than one.*

Q. *Now give me the* RULE *of the Second Phraſe?*

519. *A.* When one is to ſhew that *ſomething is, does,* or *is done.*

1. Put down the Word for that thing in the Nominative Caſe.
And, 2. Put to it the Verb Finite in the ſame Number and in the ſame Pe
Or A Verb Perſonal agreeth with its Nominative Caſe in Number and Perſo

Q. *Which are the Exerciſes in* Imitation *of the Second Phraſe?*

520. *A.*———

I. Exemples *of Verbs ſignifying* Imperfectly.

And, 1. *In the* firſt *Conjugation in* āre.

In the Preſent Tenſe Indicative.

Ego ſto	*I walk*	Ego regno	*I breakfaſt*
Tu cubas	*Thou ſtandeſt*	Tu jentas	*Thou ſuppeſt*
Avis volat	*The bullock lieth*	Coquus cœnat	*The King reigns*
Nos ambulamus	*We ſwim*	Nos clamamus	*We bleat*
Vos pugnatis	*Ye flie*	Vos latratis	*Ye cry out*
Piſces nant	*Bears fight*	Agni balant	*Dogs bark.*

In the Preter-Imp. Indic. In the Fut. Indic.

Ego ſtabam	*I was walking*	Ego jentabo	*I will fight*
Tu volabas	*Thou waſt ſtanding*	Tu pugnabis	*Thou wilt ſin*
Taurus cubabat	*The owl was flying*	Thomas peccabit	*George ſhall break*
Nos balabamus	*We were lying*	Nos regnabĭmus	*We will cry out*
Vos nabatis	*Ye bleated*	Vos clamabĭtis	*Ye will thunder*
Viri ambulabant	*Whales were ſwiming*	Nubes tonābunt	*Kings ſhall reign*

In the Imperative Mood.

Tu ambula	*Lie thou*	Tu ſtato	*Fight thou*
Anas volato	*Let the treut ſwim*	Miles pugnato	*Let the coach ſta*
Vos cubate	*Walk ye*	Vos crepatote	*Reign ye*
Salmones nanto	*Let ducks flie*	Reges regnanto	*Let bladders cra*

N B. *Exemples of the* Subjunctive Mood *you ſhall have in the* Chapter Double Sentences *to which they belong.*

521.

521. II. Exemples *of the Second Conjugation in* ēre.

In the Preſent Indicative.

Ego valeo	*I languiſh*	Ego fleo	*I mourn*
Tu cales	*Thou art cold*	Tu rides	*Thou art ſilent*
Anna languet	*John is well*	Carolus latet	*Mother weeps*
Nos frigemus	*We are hot*	Nos ſilemus	*We lurk*
Vos tepetis	*Ye are in pain*	Vos tacetis	*Ye laugh*
Dentes dolent	*Waters are warm*	Matres lugent	*Girls hold their peace*

In the Pret-imperfect Indicative.

Ego ridebam	*I held my peace*	Ego prandebam	*I was ſitting*
Tu flebas	*Thou didſt mourn*	Tu jacebas	*Thou waſt dining*
Martha ſilebat	*The maid did lan.*	Lux lucebat	*James was lying*
Nos languebamus	*We were ſilent*	Nos ſedebamus	*We were hanging*
Vos lugebatis	*Ye did weep*	Vos pendebatis	*Ye were ſhining*
Diſcipuli tacebant	*The Miſtr. laugh'd*	Roſæ olebant	*Beaſts were lurking*

In the Future Indicative.

Ego frigebo	*I ſhall burn*	Nos dolebimus	*We will be hot*
Tu tepebis	*Thou ſhalt lie hid*	Vos parebitis	*Ye ſhall be warm*
Ignis calebit	*The flock will grieve*	Gemmæ latebunt	*Things ſhall appear*

In the Imperative Mood.

Tu file	*Laugh thou*	Vos lugēte	*Hold ye your peace*
Lingua tacēto	*Let John mourn*	Pueri ridento	*Let tongues be ſilent*

522. Exemples *of the* III. *Conjug. in* ĕre.

In the Preſent Indicative.

Ego curro	*I go*
Tu vadis	*Thou runneſt*
Mare fremit	*A river flows*
Nos gemimus	*We fall*
Vos caditis	*Ye groan*
Rivi fluunt	*Seas roar*

In the Preter-Imp. Indic.

Ego ludēbam	*I was roaring*
Tu currebas	*Thou waſt ſinging*
Rivus fluebat	*The wolf was playig*
Nos vivēbāmus	*We were running*
Vos canebatis	*Ye were living*
Arbores creſceb.	*Turtles were groan.*

In the Future of the Imp. Indic.

Ego vadam	*I ſhall play*
Tu curres	*Thou ſhalt fall*
Anguis ſerpet	*A river ſhall flow*
Nos cademus	*We ſhall grow*
Vos ludetis	*Ye ſhall go*
Amnes fluent	*Snakes ſhall wriggle*

In the Imperative.

Tu freme	*Play thou*
Gramen creſcito	*Let the Wave flow*
Vos vaditote	*Roar ye*
Undæ fluunto	*Let Cats run*

523. Exemples *of the* IV. *Conjug.*

In the Preſent of the Imper. Indic.

Ego venio	*I prate*
Tu is	*Thou muttereſt*
Aries ſalit	*The mole ſleeps*
Nos garrīmus	*We go*
Vos mutītis	*Ye come*
Talpæ dormiant	*Rams leap*

In the Future of the Imp. Indic.

Ego grunniam	*I will roar*
Tu rugies	*Thou wilt grunt*
Vacca mugiet	*An horſe will neigh*
Nos mutiēmus	*We will prate*
Vos garriētis	*Ye will mutter*
Equi hinnient	*Cows will low.*

In the Preter-imperfect Indic.

Ego ſaliēbam	*I was grunting*
Tu dormiebas	*Thou waſt roaring*
Hirundo garriebat	*The bear was mut.*
Nos mutiebamus	*We were dancing*
Vos rugiebatis	*Ye were ſleeping*
Porci grunniebant	*Men were prating*

In the Imperative Mood.

Tu muti	*Go thou*
Sūs grunnīto	*Let* Sam. *come*
Vos garrīte	*Sleep ye*
Vituli mugiunto	*Let bubbles dance*

524. §. Exemples *of the firſt Conj. in* ari.

In the Preſent Indic. of the Imp.

Ego amor	*I am liked*
Tu laudaris	*Thou art loved*
Fraus damnatur	*A letter is formed*
Nos probamur	*We are tamed*
Vos domamini	*Ye are praiſed*
Literæ formantur	*Cheats are cōdemn.*

In the Preter-imp. Indic.

Ego damnābar	*I was approved*
Tu probabāris	*Thou waſt loved*
Sermo laudabātur	*The book was form.*
Nos amabamur	*We were tamed*
Vos domabāmini	*Ye were condemned*
Libri formabantur	*Speech. were praiſ.*

In the Future of the Imp. Indic.

Ego laudābor	*I will be loved*
Tu probabĕris	*Thou'lt be prais'd*
Idōlum damnabĭtur	*A word will be f.*
Nos domabĭmur	*We'll be approved*
Vos amabĭmĭni	*Ye will be tamed*
Verba formabuntur	*Idols will be cond.*

In the Imperative Mood.

Tu laudare	*Be thou condemned*
Regina amator	*Let the Kingdom be tamed*
Vos probabimini	*Be ye praiſed*
Regna domantor	*Let Queens be loved*

524. §. Ex=

525. §. Exemples *of the Second Conj. in* ēri.

In the Preſent Imperfect Indic.

Paſſives.

Ego doceor *I am held*
Tu tenēris *Thou art moved*
Sol movētur *The moon is affrighted*
Nos fovēmur *We are bitten*
Vos mordēmini *Ye are cheriſhed*
Animalia terren. *Boys are taught*

In the Future Indicative.

Ego mordēbor *I ſhall be affrighted*
Tu terrebĕris *Thou ſhalt be bitten*
Penna tenebĭtur *A rout ſhall be taught*
Nos fovebĭmur *We ſhall be moved*
Vos movebimini *Ye ſhall be cheriſhed*
Turbæ docebūtur *Pens ſhall be held*

In the Præter-imperf. Indic.

Ego docebar *I was affrighted*
Tu fovebāris *Thou waſt held*
Mūs mordebatur *A limb was mov'd*
Nos terrebāmur *We were taught*
Vos tenēbamini *Ye were cheriſhed*
Artūs movebantur *Mice were bitten*

In the Imperative.

Tu docēre *Be thou moved*
Melo mordētor *Let the rave be fright.*
Vos movēmĭni *Be ye cheriſhed*
Corvi terrentor *Let melons be bitten*

526. §. Exemples *of the Third Conjug. in* i.

In the Preſent of the Imperf. Indic.

Paſſives.

Ego legor *I am ſold*
Tu vendĕris *Thou art bought*
Merx emĭtur *A Book is read*
Nos ducĭmur *We are drawn*
Vos volvimĭni *Ye are led*
Currūs trahuntur *Wheels are roul'd*

In the Future of the Imperf. Indic.

Ego ducar *I will be drawn*
Tu trahēris *Thou wilt be led*
Cadus volvētur *A knife will be ſold*
Nos legēmur *We will be bought*
Vos emēmini *Ye will be read*
Corbes vendentur *Balls will be rouled*

In the Præter-Imp. Indicative.

Ego emēbar *I was rouled*
Tu vendēbāris *Thou waſt led*
Verbum legēbātur *A coach was drawn*
Nos trahebāmur *We were bought*
Vos ducebāmini *Ye were ſold*
Globi volvebantur *Words were read*

In the Imperative Mood.

Tu ducere *Be thou rouled*
Caſſis trahitor *Let a gown be ſold*
Vos volvimini *Be ye led*
Togæ venduntor *Let carts be drawn*

527. §. Exemples *of the Fourth Conjugat. in* īri.

In the Preſ. of the Imperf. Indicat.		In the Præter-imperf. Indicat.	
Ego audior	*I am puniſhed*	Ego vinciēbar	*I was ſtricken*
Tu punīris	*Thou art ſtricken*	Tu feriebāris	*Thou waſt bound*
Fabula finītur	*A wound is bound*	Corpus puniebatur	*A ſtripe was fel*
Nos ſentīmur	*We are heard*	Nos audiebamur	*We were ended*
Vos ferimīni	*Ye are ſenſed*	Vos finiebamini	*Ye were heard*
Vulnera vinciuntur	*Tales are ended*	Verbera ſentiebantur	*Bodies were pu*

In the Future of the Imperf. Indic.		In the Imperative Mood.	
Ego audiar	*I ſhall be ſtricken*	Tu audire	*Be thou ſtricken*
Tu puniēris	*Thou ſhalt be felt.*	Anima punītor	*Let a D. be boun*
Epiſtola finiētur	*The leg ſhall be bound*	Vos ferimini	*Be ye heard*
Nos ſentiēmur	*We ſhall be puniſh'd*	Diaboli vinciuntor	*Let Sp. be puniſh'*
Vos feriemini	*Ye ſhall be heard*		
Crura vincientur	*Letters ſhall be ended*		

528. §. Exemples *of Verbs ſignifying Perfectly.*

1. *Verbs in* aviſſe.

In the Præter-perfect. Indicat.		In the Præter-pluperf. Indic.	
Ego ambulāvi	*I have barked*	Ego navĕram	*I had walked*
Tu erraviſti	*Thou haſt bawled*	Tu ambulaveras	*Thou hadſt flown*
Tinca navit	*A Par. hath flown*	Turtur erraverat	*The dog had howl'*
Nos clamavĭmus	*We have walked*	Nos volaveramus	*We had bawled*
Vos latraviſtis	*Ye have ſtrayed*	Vos clamaveratis	*Ye had ſwum*
Perdices volavērunt	*Tench. have ſwum*	Canes ululaverant	*Turtles had ſtray'*

In the Future Perfect. Indicat.			
Ego ambulavĕro	*I ſhall have ſtrayed*	Nos cœnaverīmus	*We ſhall have flown*
Tu volaveris	*Thou ſhalt have walk.*	Vos jentaverītis	*Ye ſhall have breakf.*
Perca erraverit	*A trout ſhall have ſw.*	Truttæ naverint	*Perches ſhall hav*

[roved

529. §. Exemples *of Verbs ſignifying Perf. in* eviſſe.

In the Præter-perf. Indic.			
Ego crēvi	*I have wept*	Nos nevimus	*We have grown*
Tu neviſti	*Thou haſt grown*	Vos fleviſtis	*Ye have ſpun*
Samuel flevit	*The girl hath ſpun*	Stagna creverunt	*Eyes have wept*

In

In the Præter-pluperf. Indicat.		In the Future Perf. Indicat.
Ego fleveram	Nos neveramus	*I ſhall have grown*
Tu creveras	Vos fleveratis	*Thou ſhalt have ſpun*
Aranea neverat	Fructus creverant	*The man ſhall have wept*, &c.

530. §. Exemples *in* iviſſe.

In the Preter-perf. Indic.

Ego ivi	*I have muttered*	Ego dormivi	*I have roared*
Tu quiviſti	*Thou haſt prated*	Tu ſaliviſti	*Thou haſt ſlept*
Anus grunnivit	*An ear hath heard*	Pullus hinnivit	*A bullock hath low.*
Nos mutivimus	*We have gone*	Nos obedivimus	*We have leaped*
Vos garriviſtis	*Ye have been able*	Vos rugiviſtis	*Ye have obeyed*
Aures audiverunt	*Old women grunted*	Boves mugiverunt	*Colts have neighed*

In the Præter-pluperf. Indicat.		In the Fut. Perf. Ind
Ego grunnivĕram	*I had gone*	Ego ſalivĕro
Tu hinniveras	*Thou hadſt muttered*	Tu obedivĕris
Ovis iverat	*An aſs had roared*	Elephas rugiverit
Nos mutiveramus	*We had grunted*	Nos mugiverimu
Vos garriveratis	*Ye had neighed*	Vos dormiveritis
Aſini rugiverant	*The Lords had prated*	Cameli mutiverint

531. §. Exemples *of Verbs ſignifying Perf. in* uiſſe.

In the Præter-perf. Indicative.		In the Præter-pl. Ind.
Ego valui	*I have been ſilent*	*I had lain hid*
Tu doluiſti	*Thou haſt been hot*	*Thou hadſt been well*
Flamma latuit	*The aſhes S. have been warm*	*The ſtock had lain along*
Nos ſiluimus	*We have been well*	*We had been warm*
Vos caluiſtis	*Ye have been pained*	*Ye had been hot*
Cinĕres tepuerunt	*Poppies have lien hid*	*Heads had been in pain*

532. §. Exemples *of Verbs ſignifying Perf. in* iſſe.

In the Præter-p. Indicat.		In the Præter-pl. Ind.
Ego ſedi	*I have come*	Ego fugeram
Tu veniſti	*Thou haſt dined*	Tu ſederas
Limax fugit	*The houſe hath tumbled*	Ver venerat
Nos prandimus	*We have nodded*	Nos rueramus
Vos nuiſtis	*Ye have ſitten*	Vos pranderatis
Domūs ruerunt	*Snails have fled*	Capita nuerant

533. §. Exemples *of Verbs ſignifying Perf. in* iſſe *doubling.*

	In the Præter-perf. Indic.	In the Præter-pl. Ind.
Ego ſteti	*I have run*	*I had hung*
Tu cucurriſti	*Thou haſt ſtood*	*Thou hadſt run*
Vultus cecĭdit	*A thief hath hung*	*The ſparrow had ſung*
Nos pepēdimus	*We have ſung*	*We had fallen*
Vos cecĭniſtis	*Ye have broke wind*	*Ye had broke wind*
Fures pependerunt	*Countenances have fell*	*Feet had ſtood*

534. §. Exemples *of Verbs ſignifying Perf. in* ſiſſe.

In the Præter-perf. Indic.		In the Præter-plu. Ind.	
Ego ceſſi	*I have laughed*	Ego riſeram	*I had ſtuck*
Tu manſiſti	*Thou haſt play'd*	Tu hæſeras	*Thou hadſt abiden*
Pumilio hæſit	*A torch hath ſhined*	Eliſa manſerat	*A candle had ſhined*
Nos riſimus	*We have gone off*	Nos ceſſeramus	*We had gone off*
Vos luſiſtis	*Ye have abiden*	Vos luſeratis	*Ye had laughed*
Făces luxĕrunt	*Dwarfs have ſtuck*	Candelæ luxerant	*Fiſhes had play'd*

Q. *Is this all that is to be learned about the* Second Phraſe?

535. *A.* There are *Three things* yet to be noted about this *Second Phraſe.*

I. Two Nominative Caſes Singular, coupled together, ſpeak of more than one; and ſo being of the Plural Number, muſt have a Verb Plural. As *Samuel & Benjaminus ludunt.* Where obſerve

1. I and another is as much as *we* the firſt Perſon Plural.
2. Thou and another is as much as *ye* the ſecond Perſon Plural.
3. He and another is as much as *they* the third Perſon Plural: as,

Ego & Tu cœnamus	*I and thou do dine*
Ego & Petrus jentamus	*I and James do laugh*
Tu & porcus grunniebatis	*Thou and John were a-ſwearing*
Tu & leo rugiebatis	*Thou and the aſs were a-ſtraying*
Puer & ulula ululabunt	*The ſun and the moon will ſhine*
Anſer & olor nabunt	*The thief and the robber will hang*

Q. *Which is the Second thing to be obſerved here?*

536. *A.* II. Not onely Nouns and Pron. Subſt. but whatever denotes that which *is*, or *doth*, or *is done*, is accounted for a Nom. Caſe to the Verb.

Q. *How many ſuch are there?*

537. *A.* Three. 1. the Gerund in *dum* is the Nom. to the Verb.

Q. *What is the Gerund in* dum?

538. *A.* The Gerund in *dum* is the Neut. Gend. of the Particip. in *dus*, as *amandum, docendum*; and it ſignifies that an act muſt be done; as,

Amandum

Amandum eſt	*Loving muſt be*
Scribendum erat	*There ſhould have been writing*
Fugiendum erit	*There will be a neceſſity to flee*

There is, *There was*, *There will be* } *a neceſſity* { *to learn*, *to beat*, *to fight*

539. 2. The Verb Infinite often tells *what* is, does, or ſuffers, and then it is the Nomin. to the Verb Finite; as,

Diſcere juvat	*To try will help*	Laviſſe nocuit	*To have plaid irketh*
Imitari placet	*To eat will pleaſe*	Tacuiſſe puduit	*To have ſworn hurteth*
Dormire libet	*To drink will like*	Fodiſſe piguit	*To have ſlept pleaſeth*

540. 3. A Verb Infinite, with an Accuſ. before it, may be the Nom. before the Verb Finite. And ſo may any Sentence that ſhows what is, *&c.* Of which you ſhall ſee Exemples in the next Rule.

Q. *Which is the Third thing to be obſerved in the Second Phraſe?*

541. *A.* III. Note, that if the Verb be Infinite, the word that ſhould be of the Nomin. muſt be put into the Accuſative Caſe. And then it is moſtly engliſhed by that before it; as, *Angelos vivere paret*, That Angels live is clear. Qu. *What is clear?* *A.* That Angels live; and therefore that's the Nominative Caſe to *paret*.

Adamum peccaviſſe liquet	*That the moon glitters is clear*
Evam ediſſe nocuit	*That boys have plaid is plain*
Chriſtum vixiſſe paret	*That girls learn pleaſeth*

N. B. *In* Engliſh *we commonly put the* Verb Finite firſt, with it *before it*, *as* It is clear that Angels live. It is plain that you have ſtudied. *And thus you have learned to expreſs* that ſomething is, does, or ſuffers.

§. III. The Third Phraſe.

Q. *Which is the third ſtep towards making a Latin Sentence?*

542. *A.* The next thing is to expreſs that *one thing* is *another*, or is made *another*, or is thought or called *another*; as, I am a Man. A Girl becomes a Woman. Cows are called Cattel.

Q. *How did the* Latins *do this?*

543. *A.* If the Verb of the Second Phraſe were

1. A Verb of *Being*, as eſſe *to be*, fŏre *to be*. Or,
2. A Verb of *being made*, as fieri *to be made*, *to become*. Or,
3. A Verb of *being thought*, as putari, æſtimāri, habēri. Or,
4. A Verb of *being called*, as vocari, dici, *&c.*

Then they put another Subſtantive after the Verb in the ſame Caſe that the Subſtantive before the Verb was in.

Q. *Give me* EXEMPLES *of this Third Phraſe?*

544. *A.*

Ego ſum homo	Arbor habetur planta	Vos vocamini magiſtri
Tu fies aſinus	Nos æſtimamur Apoſtoli	Enſes dicuntur arma

Q. *Which is the* RULE *to teach me to do this?*

545. *A.*——— To expreſs that one thing { is / is made / is thought / is called } another.

Firſt, Put down the Firſt Subſt. and its Verb, as in the Sec. Phraſe.

Then put the Sec. Subſt. after the Verb, in the ſame Caſe that the Subſt. before it is in.

Or, Sum, forem, fio, exiſto, and certain Verbs Paſſives of being thought, and called, will have ſuch Caſe after them as they had before them.

Q. *Now give me ſome Imitations of this third Phraſe?*

546

Ego ſum pater	*I am a grandfather*	Ego eram mater
Tu es filius	*Thou art a grandchild*	Tu eras ſoror
Martha eſt filia	*A woman is a mother*	Robertus erat frater
Nos ſumus avi	*We are fathers*	Nos eramus virgines
Vos eſtis nepotes	*Ye are ſons*	Vos eratis puellæ
Mulieres ſunt matres	*Girls are daughters.*	Viri erant pueri
Ego ero judex	*I will be a thief*	Ego fui magiſter
Tu eris miniſter	*Thou wilt be a cut-throat*	Tu fuiſti diſcipulus
Gulielmus erit fur	*The maid will be a Mrs.*	Presbyter fuit diaconus
Nos erĭmus latrōnes	*We will be judges*	Nos fuimus proceres
Nos erĭtis adultĕri	*Ye will be umpires*	Vos fuiſtis cives
Ancillæ erunt heræ	*Scholars will be maſters*	Duces fuerunt milites

2. *Exemples of* fieri, *to become.*

Morbus fit febris	*Meat becomes fleſh*	*Young ones become birds*
Puer fiebat vir	*Drink became urine*	*Calves were made bulls*
Amor fiet odium	*Blood will become milk*	*Lambs will be made ſheep*

3. *Exemples of* putari, æſtimari, haberi.

Ego putabor gigas	Nos habebimur beſtiæ	*I am thought an owl*
Tu æſtimaberis pumilio	Vos æſtimabimini bubones	*Thou art eſteem'd an aſs*
Capo habebitur gallus	Gallinæ putabuntur olores	*A waſp's accounted a bee*

4. *Exemples of* vocari, dici.

Ego vocor umbra	*I was called a camel*	*We were called geeſe*
Tu diceris vipera	*Thou waſt called an elephant*	*Cotes were called pal.*

N. B. 547. *If theſe Verbs be uſed infinite, the word after them muſt be put into the Accuſ. Caſe, as the word before them was.* See N°. 541. *as,*

Liquet me eſſe patrem — *It is clear that I am a grandfather*
Placet te eſſe filium — *It is pleaſing that thou art a grandchild*
Pudet me fieri furem — *It's ſhamefull that ſoldiers have been thieves*

N. B. 1. *Of this you ſhall ſee more Exemples* N°. 2. *The reaſon why the two Subſt. are put in the ſame Caſe, you will learn in the* IX. Phraſe. 3. *The Nominative Caſe is no more uſed in the Latin Tongue, but in theſe two Phraſes.*

§ IV. The Fourth Phraſe.

Q. *Which is the Fourth Phraſe?*

548. *A.* The Fourth Phraſe is to expreſs an *Acting on ſomething*, as facere opus, *to do a work*; amare bellum, *to love war*; claudere os, *to ſhut the mouth.*

Q. *What two words make this Fourth Phraſe?*

549. *A.* The 1. is a Verb that betokens *to act upon ſomewhat.*
The 2. is a Subſt. in the Accuſ. Caſe, that betokens the thing acted on.

Q. *It ſeems then that all Verbs can't be uſed in this Phraſe?*

550. *A.* No: For no Verbs Neuter, nor Verbs Paſſive, nor all Verbs Active neither, can have thus an Accuſative Caſe after them.

Q. *Tell me which Verbs Active may, and which may not be uſed in this Phraſe.*

551. *A.* A Verb Active betokens to doe, and of ſuch there are two ſorts.
1. Some ſo betoken to act, that the action *paſſes over* on *ſomething*, and there is ſomething *done*, or *acted upon*, as in Cædere canem, *to ſmite a dog.* Here the action of *ſmiting* paſſes upon the dog: The dog is the thing *acted upon*, or *ſmitten*; and ſuch Verbs are called *Tranſitive*, from tranſire *to paſs over*, &c.
2. But ſome Verbs active betoken barely to doe, and there is no action ſaid to paſs over upon any thing. So *regnare, nare, repere.* Theſe ſignifie to doe, *to reign, to ſwim, to creep*, but we ſay not *to reign any thing, to ſwim* or *to creep any thing*; and theſe are called Verbs *Intranſitive.*
Now onely Verbs Tranſitive which betoken *to act on ſomething* can have an Accuſative Caſe after them, according to this Phraſe.

Q. *Give me ſome* EXEMPLES *of this?*

552. *A.*——

Deus Creavit mundum — *The world is the thing* created
Dominus formavit hominem — *Man is the thing* formed
Homo colebat hortum — *The garden is the thing* tilled
} And therefore is put in the Accuſative Caſe.

Q. *Give me the* RULE *of the Fourth Phraſe?*

553. *A.* To expreſs an acting on ſome thing.
1. Put down a Verb Tranſitive. And
2. Add to it the Subſt. Name of the thing acted upon, in the Accuſ. Caſe.

Or,

Or, All ſuch Verbs as are Tranſitives have after them an Accuſative Caſe.

Q. *What doth this Rule teach more than I knew before?*
A. Onely to put an Accuſative Caſe after a Verb Tranſitive.

Q. *Give me ſome* EXERCISES *for Imitation of this.*
554. *A.*

Ego orno ædes	*I change a garment*	Ego arabam agrum
Tu mutas veſtes	*Thou keepeſt gowns*	Tu plantabas plantam
Faber format claves	*A ſheep makes a lamb*	Aer necabat herbam
Nos juvamus plebem	*We adorn a building*	Nos vorabamus pyra
Vos ſervatis togam	*Ye help the rabble*	Vos vitabatis vitia
Oves creant agnos	*Smiths form a key*	Apes guſtabant thymi

I ſhall love the apples	Ego turbavi fontem
Thou ſhalt like the cherries	Tu ſtrangulaviſti vermem
The chaf will hide the grapes	Vulpes damnavit uvas
We will kill the locuſts	Nos probavimus poma
Ye will number the flowers	Vos laudaviſtis pruna
Tongues will praiſe the nuts	Rami celaverunt fructus

Ego moneo te	*I ſhear an he-goat*	Ego movebam labra
Tu cies turbam	*Thou milkeſt a ſhe-goat*	Tu vovebas templum
Magiſter urget opus	*The horſe bites the bridle*	Præda augebat ſpem
Nos mulgemus capros	*We admoniſh you*	Nos terrebamus veſpas
Vos tondetis capras	*Ye raiſe routs*	Vos torrebatis ficus
Equi mordent fræna	*Mrs. urge works.*	Balænæ implebant ventres

Ego docueram diſcipulos	*I had ſupped up the pottage*
Tu ſorbueras cereviſiam	*Thou hadſt held the butter*
Paulus tenuerat poculum	*Peter had had the wine*
Nos exercueramus artem	*We had taught the Church*
Vos arcueratis hoſtem	*Ye had exerciſed the ſouldiers*
Vaſa habuerant mel	*Armies had kept off armies*

Ego fingo literas	*I read an epiſtle*
Tu vertis veru	*Thou frameſt a letter*
Saxum ſiſtit ſpumam	*A husband leads a wife*
Nos ducimus uxores	*We turn ſpits*
Vos volvitis globum	*Ye ſtop globes*
Epiſcopi legunt biblia	*Boys rowl an orb*
Ego carpſi mala	*I have eat a cherry*
Tu ediſti ceraſa	*Thou haſt drunk wine*
Hirudo ſuxit ſanguinem	*The ape hath crop'd an apple*
Nos bibimus aquam	*We have ſucked waters*
Vos mandiſtis panem	*Ye have gnawed cheeſes*
Mures roſerunt caſeum	*Hogs have champed beans*

Ego fodiam fundum	*I will ſhake the hazels*	*Hear thou the ſpeech*
Tu facies gladium	*Thou ſhalt dig the ground*	*Let the noſe perceive a ſmell*
Avis pariet ovum	*An hand will ſnatch a pea*	

Nos

Nos quatiemus coryſum	*We will ſlee death*	*Strike ye the dragon*
Vos fugietis lucem	*Ye will make ropes*	*Let Magiſtrates puniſh*
Fures rapient fraga	*Birds will bring forth eggs*	*crimes.*
Ego venor cervum	*I ſmell ivys*	Ego patiar te
Tu ſequĕris leporem	*Thou looke ſt to the peas*	Tu ſolaberis me
Mas tuĕtur fœminam	*The hare follows the dog*	Sara mirabitur ſe
Nos ordimur fabulam	*We deſerve honour*	Nos hortabimur vos
Vos meremini laudem	*Ye begin ſtories*	Vos imitabimini nos
Hœdi odorantur hederam	*Cats hunt flies*	Teſtes verebuntur ſe

Q. *Are onely Nouns and Pronouns Subſtantives the Accuſative Caſe after Verbs Tranſitives!*

555. *A.* Not onely Nouns and Pronouns Subſtantives, but whatever other word or words betoken the thing *done* or *acted upon*, are accounted the Accuſative Caſe to the Verb Tranſitive.

So 1. A Verb Infinite is the Accuſative Caſe after the Verb Tranſitive: as,

Ego amo ludere	where	*to play*	is the thing	*loved*	And therefore is accounted of the Accuſative Caſe.
Tu cupis dormire		*to ſleep*		*deſired*	
Mus conatur currere		*to run*		*endeavoured*	

Imitations *with more* Exemples.

Ego didici ſcribere	*I dare to fight*	Ego ſtudeo vacare
Tu cœpiſti legere	*Thou uſeſt to bray*	Tu vis bibere
Scapha ſolet nare	*An animal loves to eat*	Delphin non vult capi
Nos nolumus queri	*We are accuſtomed to grind*	Nos experimur ſcire
Vos ſueviſtis ſtrepere	*Ye have learn'd to be ſilent*	Vos quitis meminiſſe
Pulices audent mordere	*Dews have begun to fall*	Pueri debent conſiderare

Q. *Which is the Second thing put after Verbs Tranſitive as an Accuſative Caſe?*

556. *A.* II. An Infinite Verb with an Accuſ. before it according to N°. 541 is put oft as an Accuſ. after a Verb Tranſitive. As,

Nos ſcimus leonem rugire	*That a lion roars*	is the thing	*known*	and ſo of the Accuſ. Caſ.	
Ego video torrem ardere	*That a brand burns*		*ſeen*		
Tu negas tubam ſonare	*That a trumpet ſounds*		*denied*		

Imitations *with more* Exemples.

Ego ſentio ignem urĕre	*I think that the King comes*
Tu putas te valĕre	*Thou believeſt that ſtones live*
Bubo credit ſe canĕre	*John ſaith that he feareth*
Nos ſcimus vos furĕre	*We feel that live-coals burn*
Vos dicitis nos ridere	*Ye ſay that hens prate*
Homines aiunt ſidĕra oriri	*Old women think that ſtars fall*

Ego judico vos dormiviſſe	*I have known that play hath harmed*
Tu cenſes ratem arſiſſe	*Thou remembereſt that the earth hath quaked*
Petrus jurat ſe metuiſſe	*The man hopes that faults have been hid*
Nos meminimus nos vomuiſſe	*We ſwear that ſnow hath glittered*
Vos noviſtis tellurem tremere	*Ye think that the ſummer is fled*
Adulteri ſperant ſe latuiſſe	*Girls judge that garments adorn*

557. N. B. *The Interjections*, En! Ecce! Hem! Proh! *and* Apage! (*which indeed is a verb*) *when uſed* Tranſitively *have an* Accuſative Caſe; as, *En arcem! Ecce altaria! Hem Davum tibi! Proh fidem! Apage iſtam ſalutem!*

§. V. The Fifth Phraſe.

Q. *Which is the Fifth ſtep to be made in making Sentences?*

558. *A.* The Fifth Phraſe is when we expreſs our thoughts by an Adverb or Prepoſition added to a Verb: as, To love *now*. To ſtay *here*, &c.

Q. *Which then are the two words relating to each other in this Phraſe?*

559. *A.* The firſt is a *Verb* as ſet down by the Second Phraſe.
The ſecond is an *Adverb* or *Prepoſition* added to that Verb.

Give me ſome EXEMPLES.

Q. Num Rex venit?	Q. An tu ſcribis?	Q. Luduntne pueri?
A. Imo Rex venit	A. Næ ego ſcribo	A. Pueri quidem ludunt
Rex non venit	Ego haud ſcribo	Tu ne lude

Q. *Give me the Rule of this Phraſe?*

560. *A.* When you expreſs your thought by an Adverb or Prepoſition after a Verb.

1. Set down the Verb according to the foregoing Rules.
2. To it add the Adverb or Prepoſition.

N. B. So that all that this Rule teaches, is to put an Adverb or Prepoſition to the Verb.

Give me ſome IMITATIONS.

Q. Ubi vos habitatis?	Q. *Where dwell the tribes?*
Ego habito hīc	*The tribes dwell here*
Familia habitat ībi	*Families dwell there*
Q. Quid uſquam manet diu?	Q. *What any-where lives long?*
Umbræ manent nuſquam	*A ſhadow continues no-where*
Q. Unde res veniunt?	Q. *Whence flit the Schools?*
Rixæ veniunt hinc	*The Schools flit hence*
Schola migravit inde	*A quarrel ariſes thence*
Q. Quo vos gradimini?	Q. *Whither fly the birds?*
Nos gradimur huc	*The ſparrow flies hither*

Q. Quando

Q. Quando venit hyems?	Q. *When come ſhowers?*
Nix cecidit hĕri	*Showers fell yeſterday*
Glacies venit dudum	*Winter roared long ſince*
Grando crepavit olim	*I ſaw hail long ago*
Bruma fremit jam	*Snows fall now*
Fulmen volat nunc	*Lightnings glitter now*
Imber venite mox	*Froſts will follow ſtraight*
An cœlum ruit unquam?	*Do ſtars tumble ever?*
Humus ardet nunquam	*A ſtar will never fall*
Q. Quoties tu legiſti biblia?	Q. *How oft have you read Matthew?*
Ego legi biblia ſemel	*We have read Matthew once*
Suſanna legit Lucam bis	*The boys have read Mark twice*
Tu maculaviſti librum ter	*I have fowled the paper thrice*
Ego fudi lacrymas quater	*We have poured a tear four times*
Nos erravimus ſæpe	*Ye have blotted books often*
Tu mentiris ſemper	*Thou uſeſt to play always*
Q. Quomodo homines loquuntur?	Q. *How do boys play?*
A. Lucas loquitur temĕre	A. *John plays raſhly*
Nos loquimur fruſtra	*James endeavours in vain*
Turba fatur ſimul	*Peter and Paul play together*
Tu i præ	*I will go before*
Ego ibo pone	*Come thou after*

§. VI. The Sixth Phraſe.

Q. *What is the Sixth Phraſe?*

561. *A.* The Prepoſition in the former Phraſe ever ſignifies a *regard to ſomething*: as, If you go *before*, you go *before ſomething*; If I come *after*, I come after *ſomething*. Now the Sixth Phraſe will teach you how rightly to expreſs *that thing*: As,

Go thou before *me* — I will come after *thee*

Q. *Which are the Two words related to each other in this Phraſe?*

562. *A.* The Firſt is a Prepoſition as ſet down by the Fifth Phraſe. The Second is the Subſtantive Name of the *thing* it points at.

Q. *Give me ſome* EXEMPLES *to make this plain.*

563. *A.*

Ego eo ad templum	Tu ſtas ante oſtium
Miles jacet intra caſtra	Caſæ ſtruuntur apud forum
Forĭca eſt poſt horreum	Vos ſorbetis jus præter vinum

Q. *Which is the* RULE *of the Sixth Phraſe?*

564. *A.* To expreſs the regards of one thing to another.

I. Put down a Preposition according to the former Rule.
II. To it put the Name of the thing it points at, in the right Case.

Q. *What doth this Rule teach new?*

565. *A.* Onely to put the Substantive after the Preposition in its right Case.

Q. *Which is the right Case after the Preposition?*

566. *A.* 1. After the first 27 Prepositions the Accusative Case } is the
2. After the next 12. the Ablative Case } right
3. After the last 4 sometimes the Accus. and sometimes the Ablat. } Case.

567. §. 1. The First Special Rule of the Sirth Phase.

The first 27 Prepos. N°. 372. have after them an Accus. Case.

1	Cardo stridet *ad* januam	*The Keeper lies* at *the door*
	Aurora vocat ancillam *ad* colum	*The evening calls boys* to *bed*
2	Bellum geritur *adversus* hostes	*Exercise thou fear* towards *God*
3	Olera venduntur *apud* forum	*Tables are bought* at *the Town*
4	Tenebræ non migrant *ante* lucem	*Flesh is roasted* before *the fire*
5	Aula patet *cis* culinam	*The kitchen lies* behither *the hall*
6	Turres videntur *citra* arcem	*A castle is seen* behither *the tower*
7	Villæ jacent *circum* urbem	*An hedge is put* about *the fields*
8	Pulices saliunt *circa* cameram	*A flea leaps* about *the walls*
9	Tu noli offendere *contra* leges	*Faults are made* against *art*
10	Amor exercetur *erga* parentes	*Carry thy self well* towards *Magistrates*
11	Greges pascuntur *extra* oppidum	*Men feed a flock* without *the walls*
12	Sanguis salit *intra* venas	*The veins lurk* within *the skin*
13	Suræ ornant crura *infra* poplitem	*The heel is placed* beneath *the ancle*
14	Poma sparguntur *inter* puĕros	*Divide ye the money* among *the girls*
15	Boves arant *juxta* pagum	*The fishes swim* by *the mill*
16	Plagæ debentur *ob* scelĕra	*Boys are beaten* for *faults*
17	Honor est *penes* Regem	*Honours have been* with *Kings*
18	Tu fallis magistrum *per* ministrum	*We deceive the mother* by *the daughter*
	Canes venantur *per* valles	*A dog hunts* through *the vally*
19	Simia cacavit *pone* arcam	*The doe lurks* behind *the Wood*
20	Ego ero apud te *post* mensem	*We will be with you* after *an hour*
21	Herus tribuit potum *præter* cibum	*Masters give bread* beside *flesh*
22	Aquæ fluunt *propter* marginem	*The whales sleep* nigh *the shore*
	Virtūs debet coli *propter* se	*Do thou obey* for *love*
23	Tu cole parentes *secundum* Deum	*We regard the Queen* next to *the King*
	Ego legi hist. *secundum* Marcum	*Exemples are made* according *to art*
24	Arbor crescit *seçus* callem	*A rose grew* by *the lake*
25	Cornua tollunt se *supra* verticem	*The head lifts it self* above *the horns*
26	Grana portantur *trans* oceănum	*Swallows fly* over *the Sea*
27	Gloria manebit *ultra* vitam	*Punishment remains* beyond *death*

568. §. II. The Second Special Rule of the Sixth Phr.

The next 12 *Prepo.* N°. 373. *have an Abl. Ca. after them.*

1. A *before a Conſonant*, Ab *or* abs *before Vowels and Conſonants.*

1 Ego novi te *à* capite ad calcem — *The wall will defend us* from *the ſhower*
Panes coquuntur *à* populo — *The head is combed* by *the maid*
2 *Abſque* magiſtro ſi eſſet nos hodie dormiremus — *Were it* not for *the Miſtreſs we ſhould die.*
3 Tu indue pallium *cum* tunica — *We put on the coat* with *the cloak*
4 Mures lingunt butyr. *coram* coquo — *Scholars laugh* before *the Maſter*
5 Ego duxi uxorem *clam* Patre — *Wives are taken* unknown *to Fathers*
6 Murmur auditur *de* luco — *We hear murmurs* out of *the wood*
Mulieres garriunt *de* ſupellectile — *A woman will prate* of *a gooſe*
7 Nihil fit *ex* nihilo — *Glaſſes may be made* of *aſhes*
8 Tu noli meiere *palam* populo — *Do not thou pray* before *the rabble*
9 Balænæ agunt haleces *præ* ſe — *A wolf drives the ſheep* before *him*
Tu temnis cochleam *præ* oſtrea — *We deſpiſe oiſters* in reſpect of *cockles*
Femora tremunt *præ* timore — *The heart leaps* for *joy*
10 Gentes colunt imaginem *pro* Deo — *You count an ounce* for *a pound*
11 Schola non regitur *ſine* cura — *Schools can't be ruled* without *a Maſter*
12 Vos odiſtis ſceleꝛa verba *tenus* — *Cover the breaſt* up to *the neck*

569. §. III. The Third Spec. Rule of the Sixth Phr.

Theſe four Prepoſitions, In, ſub, ſuper *and* ſubter, *when they denote* **motion, into** *or* **towards** *a thing, have an Accuſative, otherwiſe an Ablative.*

1 Tu divide ſyllabam *in* literas — *We divide words* into *ſyllables*
Reges ſolent ſedere *in* throno — *Jewels uſe to be put* in *a crown*
2 Mappa cecidit *ſub* cathedram — *The knives are fallen* down under *the table*
Culter jacet *ſub* diſco — *The diſhes lie* under *the napkins*
3 Vermis naſcitur *ſubter* terra — *Worms live* under *ground*
Vulpes current *ſubter* collem — *Fiſhes run* in under *banks*
4 Tu non debes cubare *ſuper* herum — *The maſter ſits* above *the miſtreſs*
Faber loquitur *ſuper* inſtrumentis — *Women talk* about *the wheel*

Q. *Is there any thing yet to be noted about this* Sixth Phraſe?

570. *A. Note* 1. That the Accuſative of the Gerund in *Dum* may be uſed after *Ad*, *Ante*, *Inter*, *Ob*, *Propter*: as,

Exercitus alitur ad vincendum hoſtes	*I came for to buy ſugar*
Nos lambimus jus inter edendum	*Horſes rave before taming*
Tu poſcis pretium ob ſolvendum me	*Cry not out in dining time*
Ego veni propter defendendum te	*You came for to puniſh us*

571. *Note* 2. That the Ablative Caſe of the Gerund in *Dum* may be uſed after *a, ab, abs, de, e, ex, cum, in, pro*: as,

Pueri terrentur à diſcendo	*Dogs will not be frighted from barking*
Vos nectitis verba de lavando	*Ye make (knit) delays about painting*
Pœnæ oriuntur ex temĕre agendo	*Praiſe will ariſe from ſtudying*

572. *Note* 3. That the natural place of the Prepoſ. is next before its Caſe.

But 1. Sometimes the Prepoſition is ſet before the Verb and compounded with it. As,

Aves adeunt nidos i. e. eunt ad	*The Biſhop goes to the Church*
Dux anteit milites, i. e. it ante	*Leaders will go before the Army*
Ego detrudo navem ſaxo	*Ships are thruſt from the ſtones*
Nox ſuadet inire ſomnum	*In the night go thou into the bed*

573. N. B. *Cum* is ſet after *me, te, ſe, quî, nobis, vobis, quibus.*

Quicum vos cupitis vivĕre?	*With whom doſt thou deſire to play?*
Ego cupio vivere tecum	*Wilt thou dine with me?*
Tu ſperas ambulare mecum	*The Scholars did breakfaſt with us*
Nos volumus molere vobiſcum	*John believes that you learn with him*

§. VII. The Seventh Phaſe.

Q. *Which is the* Seventh Phraſe?

574. *A.* The *Seventh Phraſe* is to ſhew that what is, does or is done, *is, does*, or *is done* To or For ſomething, that is, to its uſe, gain or loſs.

Q. *Which then are the two words that make this Phraſe?*

575. *A.* The firſt is a Verb ſet down by the *Second Phraſe.*

The Second is a Subſtantive of the Dative Caſe; as, *I write* for *you.*

N. B. Here the Engliſh before the Subſtantive uſe To or For, according to the *Sixth Phraſe.* But in Latin they uſe a Dative Caſe.

Q. *Give me ſome* EXEMPLES *of this?*

576. *A.*

Locus fuit conſilio	Tu fregiſti nuces ſimiæ	Nux datur ſimiis
Pax erit eccleſiæ	Anna ſervat baccas ſibi	Baccæ ſervantur vobis

Q. *Which is the* RULE *of the* Seventh Phraſe?

577. *A.* When you are to expreſs that ſomething *is, does*, or *is done* To or For the acquiſt of another.

I. Put down the Verb according to the *Second Phraſe.*
II. Add to it the name of that thing in the Dative Caſe.
Or, All manner of Verbs put *Acquiſitively* will have a Dative Caſe.

Q. *What mean you by Verbs put* Acquiſitively?
578. *A.* Then is a Verb put *Acquiſitively*, when by it is expreſſed that ſome good or bad is *acquired*, or got To or For ſomething.

Q. *What doth this Rule teach you more than you learn'd before?*
579. *A.* Onely to put a *Dative Caſe* to a Verb put *Acquiſitively.*

Q. *Give me ſome* IMITATIONS *of the* Seventh Phraſe?
580. *A.*

Pueri debent cavēre natibus	*Women uſe to beware for the face*
Ego paridam feneſtram muſcis	*Do not thou open the windows to the wind*
Ancilla molit frugem familiæ	*Mules grind peas for the men-ſervants*
Locuſta quærit ſibi cibum	*Locuſts ſeek to themſelves dew*
Vos ſemper cedite parentibus	*Parents do not give way to ſons*
Tu domabis mihi damam	*I have tamed the Bucks for you*
Fraudes non pariunt homini laudem	*Deceit brings glory to no-body*
Frater ſpondet ſororem viro	*The ſiſter engages the brother to the maid*
Tu ſoles ferre rumores matri	*Ye are wont to tell tales to the father*
Boves arant agros hominibus	*A bullock plows a field for the King* / *The earth brings graſs for beaſts*
Falx metet tibi ſegĕtem	*Crops are mowen for the city*
Schola vacat ſtudiis	*Ye are not at leiſure for buſineſs*
Labores augentur diſcipulis	*Labour is increaſed to the Maſter*
Juga promuntur tauris	*A yoke ſhall be brought out for cows*
Pecunia numeratur Diacono	*I will number the ounces to the Biſhop*

581. *N. B.* 1. To *is oft left out in Engliſh as eaſily underſtood:* as,

Give me the Cup, for *to me*	*You anſwer them nothing*
I ſent the Doctor a guinea	*I wrote you a letter*
We have caught you a bird, i. *for you*	*I will tell the Maſter this*

582. N. B. 2. *Theſe following have a* Dative, *though the Engliſh of them ſeems to be* Tranſitive, *becauſe* To *cannot be well ſupplied.*

Civitas credit Magiſtratibus	*Magiſtrates believe the Citizens*
Magiſtratūs fidunt Civitati	*Cities truſt the Magiſtrates*
Eccleſia favet Epiſcopo	*The Biſhops favour the Churches*
Mundus ſtudet litibus	*The Village ſtudies ſtrife*
Gelu nocet ſpicis	*Winds hurt the corn*
Herba medetur morbo	*Herbs will heal diſeaſes*
Tribūs non obediunt legi	*The people obeys the King*
Petrus voluit Jeſum parcere ſibi	*Men ſpare children*

583. N. B.

583. N.B. 3. *The Interjections* En, Ecce, Hem, Hei, Væ, *are ſometimes put* Acquiſitively *for Verbs with their Nominative, and have a Dative Caſe.*

Hem tibi Petrum	Hei mihi	*Lo a ſtable for horſes*
En altaria ſoli	Væ vobis	*Behold a den for lions*
Ecce templum Lunæ	*Here's John for you*	*Alas for us*

§. VIII. The Eighth Phraſe.

Q. *What is the* Eighth Phraſe *to expreſs?*

584. *A.* The *Eighth Phraſe* is to expreſs that one thing is the thing of another: as, The Book of the Maſter.

Q. *Which are the two words related to each other in this Phraſe?*

585. *A.* The Firſt is a Subſtantive of any Caſe as ſet down by any of the former Rules

The Second is alſo a Subſtantive of the Genitive Caſe, telling *who's* or *of what* the other thing is.

N. B. *In Engliſh either we put the Prepoſition* Of *before the latter Subſtantive by the* Sixth Phraſe, *or put* es *or* 's *after it, and ſet it before the other: as*, The Book of the Maſter, *or*, The Maſter's Book: The peace of the Church, *or*, The Churches peace.

But in Latin the Genitive Caſe is deſigned to ſignify the ſame.

Q. *Give me ſome* EXEMPLES *of the* Eighth Phraſe?

586. *A.* A Genitive is thus added to the Subſtantive

Of the Firſt Ph. O ſtella cœli. Heus fili Reginæ.
Of the Second Ph. Pars maris fervet. Jecur beſtiarum voratur.
Of the Third Ph. Ego ſum membrum Chriſti. Tu es dux ſcholæ.
Of the Fourth Ph. An tu legiſti epiſtolas Pauli. Tu tenes caudam aſini.
Of the Sixth Ph. Canes cubant ad oſtium domūs. Ros ſtat in vertice roſæ.
Of the Seventh Ph. Nos damus gloriam Domino mundi. Tu pare Regi regum.

Q. *Now give me the* RULE *to direct me to make the like?*

587. *A.* To ſhew a thing to be the thing Of another thing.

I. Put down a Subſtantive according to the former Rules.

II. Add to it the ſecond Subſtantive in the Genitive Caſe.

Or, When two Subſtantives come together, the latter ſhall be in the Genitive Caſe, if the one ſignify the thing of the other.

Q. *What doth this Rule add to what I have learned before?*

588. *A.* To put to a former Subſtantive another in the Genitive Caſe.

Q. *Give me ſome matter for* IMITATION?

589. *A.* 1. *A Genitive put to the Subſtantive of each Phraſe.*

1 O duces populi	O *tongues of Angels*
O cuſtodes fœderis	O *Sons of the Church*
O cives Londini	O *Nobles of the earth*

2. Cura juris decet hominem — *The care of works adorns the mind*
Preces fidei valent apud Deum — *The prayers of hope drive away ſorrow*
Metus culpæ nutrit ſpem — *The fears of a crime keep the ſoul*

3. Robur eſt cauſa ſalūtis — *Health will be the cauſe of ſtrength*
Nomen eſt ſignum rei — *Words are the names of things*
Horæ ſunt partes diēi — *A day is a part of a month*

4. Veſica capit humorem corporis — *Bladders hold the humours of bodies*
Mors tollit gaudia ſensûs — *Joys take away the dread of death*
Palatum ſentit ſaporem fellis — *The dug hath plenty of milk*

5. Ego accuſo te de crimine luxûs — *Thou accuſeſt me of the crime of anger*
Adamas micat inter lapides litŏris — *Diamonds glitter among jewels of the crown*
Sudor fluit per canales cutis — *Bloud will flow through a vein of the foot*

6. Rex dat ſtipem cuſtodi palatii — *The Mr. gives hire to the keepers of the ſtable.*
Tu ne fide auxilio hoſtis — *We do not truſt to the help of a fly*
Tu dic laudes Domino ætheris — *Sing thou praiſe to the Lord of life.*

590. *N. B.* 1. Seldom the Verb Infinite is the Genitive Caſe: as,

Tempus eſt ſolvere colla equorum — *It is not time to looſe the ſchool*
Eſt tibi ſtudium tueri arcem — *We have a deſire to ſow the garden*

591. *N. B.* 2. But moſtly the Genit. of the Gerund in *Dum* is thus put: as,

Amor habendi mel urget apes — *The love of ſtudying urges on the boy*
Eſt nobis deſiderium regnandi — *Ye cheriſh the deſire of drinking*
Odium diſcendi cepit vos — *Boys ſhow an hatred of knowing*
Tu facito finem ludendi — *The end of ſinning is death*
Nunquam fuit mihi otium ſcribendi — *Is there not leiſure to plant?*

§. IX. The Ninth Phraſe.

Q. *Which is the ninth motion to be made towards making a Sentence?*

592. *A.* Sometimes the Subſtantive in the former Rules doth not ſufficiently expreſs the thing meant by it, and then there is need to add another Subſtantive which may more fully declare and explain it; and this is the *Ninth Phraſe.*

Q. *Which then are the two words of the* Ninth Phraſe?

593. *A.* The firſt is a Subſtantive ſet down by one of the former Rules. The Second is another Subſtantive denoting the ſame thing added to it.

Q. *Give me ſome* EXEMPLES *to make this plain?*

594. *A.* Thus a ſecond Subſtantive is added to the Subſtantive.

Of the Firſt Ph. O Rex Carole. *He that calls the King calls Charles.*
Of the Second Ph. Rex Carolus regnat. *If the King reigns Charles reigns.*
Of the Third Ph. Ille eſt Rex Carolus. *If he be King he is Charles.*
Of the Fourth Ph. Amo Regem Carolum. *If I love the King I love Charles.*
Of the Sixth Ph. Ego loquor de Rege Carolo. *If I ſpeak of the King I ſpeak of Charles.*
Of the Seventh Ph. Tu pare Regi Carolo. *If you obey the King you obey Charles.*
Of the Eighth Ph. Ego vidi thronum Regis Caroli. *The throne of the King is the throne of Charles.*

And therefore the latter Subſtantive is ſtill put in the ſame Caſe that the former was in. N. B. *So that the firſt Subſtantive's right Caſe muſt be known before this Phraſe can be uſed*; and therefore this *Phraſe* is the *Ninth.*

Q. *Give me the* RULE *of the* Ninth Phraſe?
595. *A.* To ſhew what thing a thing is.
I. Set down the firſt Subſtantive according as the former Rules direct.
II. Put to it another Subſtantive denoting the ſame thing in the ſame Caſe.

Or, Two Subſtantives denoting one thing ſhall be put both in one Caſe.

Q. *Give me ſome* IMITATIONS.
596. *A.*——

1. O Domine Deus, tu bea eccleſiam	*O father Adam, regard thou God*
O Jeſu Chriſte, tu fove populum	*O wife Eve, follow thou vertue*
2. Dóminus Magiſter vetat garrire	*The Gent. the Miſtris forbids to rove*
Domina Hera vellit piſa	*The Ladies the Miſtreſſes pluck roſes*
3. Malus eſt arbor	*Apple-trees are trees*
Ador putatur ſal	*Salt is thought a mineral.*

N. B. *And here you ſee the reaſon why in the* 3d Phraſe *the* ſecond Subſt. *is put into the ſame Caſe with the* firſt, *becauſe* one *is ſaid to be* the other.

4. Ego legebam Paulum Apoſtolum	*I was hearing Henry the Biſhop*
Tu ſeris granum ſemen frugis	*We ſow grains the ſeeds of wheat.*
6. Tu rogas de bibliis lege vitæ	*We ſpeak of the bible the word of God*
Tu cave à Diabolo hoſte animæ	*Caſt an eye to the ſky the place of ſtars*
7. Tu funde preces Deo Regi	*Thou gaveſt a gift to the Lord Judge*
Ego miſi munera Joanni fratri	*Spare thou the ſoul the temple of God*
8. Maria fuit filia Regis Henrici	*Charles was the ſon of King Charles*
Cives ſunt columnæ urbis Londini	*Lee the end of vices the diſeaſes of ſouls!*

§. X. The

§. X. The Tenth Phraſe.

Q. *What is the* Tenth Phraſe?

597. *A.* When we are to expreſs that the thing mentioned by any *Subſtantive* of the foregoing Rules is ſuch or ſuch, then we put to it an *Adjective*; as, *a man is* good *or* bad, wiſe *or* fooliſh, and this is the *Tenth Phraſe*.

Q. *Which then are the two words of the* Tenth Phraſe?

598. *A.* The Firſt is a Subſtantive of any Caſe put by a former Rule. The Second is an Adjective added to that Subſtantive.

Q. *Give me ſome* EXEMPLES *of this.*

599. *A.* Exemples where an Adjective is joyned to the Subſtantive of

1. *Ph.* *Sing.*	O Domine bone O Domina bona O pomum bonum	*Plur.* O Domini boni O Dominæ bonæ O poma bona.
2. *Ph.*	Dominus bonus amatur. Domina bona laudatur. Pomum bonum voratur.	Domini boni coluntur. Dominæ bonæ quæruntur. Poma bona eduntur.
4. *Ph.*	Ego optavi Dominum bonum Tu ſperaviſti Dominam bonam Mus quæſivit pomum bonum	Ego invito Dominos bonos. Tu vocas Dominas bonas. Simia quærit poma bona.
6. *Ph.* Quis vult	mori pro Domino bono lugere cum Domina bona prandere ſine pomo bono	Nemo queritur de Dominis bonis Ædes ornantur à Dominis bonis Corpora aluntur à pomis bonis.
7. *Ph.*	Ego placeo Domino bono Tu noces Dominæ bonæ Natura dat ſaporem pomo bono	Quis nolit cedere Dominis bonis Tu deles maculas Dominis bonis Dentes non parcunt pomis bonis.
8. *Ph.*	Ego credo verbis Domini boni Tu verris pallium Dominæ bonæ Naſus ſentit odorem pomi boni	Non eſt nobis copia Dominorum bonorum Dominarum bonarum pomorum bonorum.

N. B. *Where all along you ſee the* Adject. *is put into the* ſame Gender *and the* ſame Caſe, *and the* ſame Number *that the* Subſtantive *is of.*

2. *Therefore the Rule of the* Adject. *is not to be taught till the right* Caſe *of the* Subſt. *be known, and that was not before now.*

Q. *Give me the* RULE *of the Tenth Phraſe.*

600. *A.* To ſhew a thing to be ſuch or ſuch,

I. Put down the Subſt. name of that thing by the former Rules.

II. And to it add the Adj. in the ſame Caſe, ſame Gender, and Number.

Or, The Adjective, whether it be a Noun, Pronoun or Participle, ſhall agree with its Subſtantive in Caſe, Gender and Number.

Q. *Give me ſome* IMITATIONS *for exerciſe.*

601. *A.*———

O Deus æterne, tu ſemper manes	*O eternal Angels, ye ever abide*
O fortuna mala, tu lædis homines.	*O evil ſpirits, ye hurt ſouls.*
O omnes nationes, ne eſte brutæ	*O every Nation, fear thou mare*
O ſidera clara, vos eſtis lampades cœli.	*O clear conſtellation, do thou ſhine.*
Aura lenis non ſternit avenam	*Gentle gales move ears of corn*
Puella pulchra nubit viro turpi.	*Fair maids marry to filthy men.*
Homines juvenes ſpernunt ſenes	*An old man ſcorneth a young man*
Pruina cana tegit latos campos.	*Hoary froſts cover a broad field.*

N. B. *Sometimes there comes a Verb between them, and ſtill they agree.*

Sepia ſolet eſſe nigra	*We ſee that Ink is black*
Papyrus debet eſſe alba	*We know that paper ought to be white*
Teter odor non fit ſuavis	*Stinking ſmells become not ſweet*
Mel ſincerum erit dulce	*The taſte of pure honey is ſweet*
Maturæ olivæ ſunt gratæ	*A ripe olive is acceptable*
Alea habetur ludus impius	*Shun the graceleſs play of dice*
Filum novum farcit pannum veterem	*New threds patch old cloths*
Linea recta ſecat lineam curvam	*A crooked line cuts a ſtrait line*
Res dubiæ movent mentem fortem	*A dubious matter moves ſtout minds*
Sclopus pellit pilam gravem	*Guns will ſend forth heavy bullets*
Tunica longa verrit humum	*Long coats ſweep the ſtreets*
Æquum mare dat viam navi	*The ſhip runs in an even ſea*
Acer miles haud metuit necem	*Death frights not a brave ſoldier*
Frons blanda arguit gaudium	*Joy makes a blith forehead*
Fames pungit alvum jejunam	*Hungry paunches raiſe deſire*
Solus homo eſt animal nudum	*Onely men are naked animals*
Leo habet vim miram	*There is wonderfull force in a lion*
Fama vana turbat civitatem	*Vain fables trouble cities*
Ego cerno aërem eſſe ſerenum	*The Skie will be clear by and by*
Toga parva non eſt onus magnum	*Small gowns are not great burthens*
Q. Quot ſunt res in natura rerum?	Q. *How many things are there here?*
R. Unus eſt maximus Deus	A. *There is one Queen in a Kingdom*
Sexûs animalium ſunt duo	*The parts of the bible are two*
Tres ſunt teſtes in Cœlo alto	*The King governs three Kingdoms*
Partes anni ſunt quatuor	*The ſides of a Church are four*
Sensûs animalis ſunt quinque	*There are five fingers in one hand*
Pennæ ſunt ſex in una ala	*Three birds have ſix wings*
Centum anni dicuntur ſeculum	*An age holds an hundred years*
Ambæ manus jam ſunt laſſæ	*Both feet are now tired*
Mons eſt collis grandis ponderis	*Heavy is the weight of a big mount*
Leo eſt rex beſtiarum ferarum	*A ſheep is the meat of a wild beaſt*
Q. Quotus diſcipulus es tu?	Q. *Of what number am I?*
R. Ego ſum diſcipulus primus	A. *Thou art the firſt girl*

Q. Quoti ſunt cæteri pueri?	Q. *What are the other girls?*
R. Joannes eſt ſecundus	A. *Martha ought to be ſecond*
Robertus heri erat tertius	*Betty deſerves to be third*
Ego puto Thomam eſſe quartum	*I judge that Joan is fourth*
Nona hora invitat ad jentaculum	*Breakfaſts are taken at the ninth hour*
Tu ſedes medius inter parentes	*Two girls ſit midmoſt between us*
Singulæ oves pariunt geminos agnos.	*Single hares bring twin young-ones.*

602. *N. B.* When in Engliſh we by this Rule uſe an Adjective with am, the Latins oft expreſs both by one Verb; as,

I am able	Ego poſſum	*I am well, ſtrong*	Ego valeo	See the
I am cold	Ego frigeo	*I am ſilent*	Ego ſileo	Verbs
I am hot	Ego caleo	*I am glad*	Ego gaudeo	Neuter.

603. §. II. The Pronouns Adjectives.

Quis homo poteſt ſecare cotem?	*What knives can cut whetſtones?*
Quæ fœmina coquit ſilices?	*Which women boil pumices?*
Quod lignum rumpit corticem?	*What woods burſt the rinds?*
Ille *or* is *or* iſte locus eſt profanus	*Thoſe places are profane*
Ipſe Magiſter poſuit potum columbo	*Maſters themſelves lay meat for doves*
Hæc charta non eſt pura	*Theſe papers are not pure*
Idem folium habet florem album	*The ſame leaves have white flowers*
Quædam ſpatia ſunt anguſta	*Some bounds are narrow*
Alii termini ſunt ampli	*Other ſpaces are large*
In hac ſtirpe non eſt frons ulla	*In theſe ſtocks there are not any leaves*
Nullum eſt mendum in toto opere	*There are no works without blemiſhes*
Q. Utram genam cupis fricare?	*Which hand do ye deſire to ſcratch?*
R. Neutram genu eſt claudum	*Neither hand hath been ſound*
Altera gena erit fricanda	*I ſee the other hand lame*
Q. Cujus eſt hic cultер?	*Whoſe knives judge ye theſe to be?*
R. Tu ſcis hunc cultrum eſſe meum	*I think that that torch is mine*
Illa fax non poteſt eſſe tua	*All theſe knives are yours*
Petrus ait eam cymbam eſſe ſuam	*James ſwears that theſe boats are his.*

604. §. III. The Participles Adjective.

1. In *ans*, *ens* or *ients*, being or doing.

Pater amans habet amantem filium	*Loving fathers have loving ſons*
Nos audivimus magiſtrum docentem	*The Maſter ſaw us learning.*

2. In *andus*, *endus* or *iendus*, To be done, That ought to be done.

Bonus puer eſt laudandus	*Good girls are to be praiſed*
Tu negas pulicem eſſe prendendum	*I deny that moles are to be caught.*

3. In *urus*, about to be, or about to doe.

Ego ſum iturus in ſcholam	*We are about to go into the town*
Nos ſumus pranſuri apud te	*Ye are to ſup with me.*

4. In *tus*, *ſus* or *xus*. In Engliſh in d, t or n, Done already, or being done, or having done, or having been done.

Homo doctus terit multos libros	*Learned men wear away a book*
Lyra audita ſolatur animum.	*The ſound of harps heard is ſweet.*

605. *How to make the Verb in* i *ſignifie Perfectly.*

N. B. To make a Verb in *i* to ſignifie Perfectly, you muſt uſe the Participle in *tus*, *ſus* or *xus*, with the Nerb *eſſe*; as,

Amari *to be loved*,	amatus eſſe *or* fuiſſe *to have been loved.*
Doceri *to be taught*,	doctus eſſe *or* fuiſſe *to have been taught.*
Legi *to be read*,	lectus eſſe *or* fuiſſe *to have been read.*
Audiri *to be heard*,	auditus eſſe *or* fuiſſe *to have been heard.*

Præter Perfect Tenſe.		Præter plup. Tenſe.
Ego amatus ſum	*I have been liked*	Ego habitus eram
Tu probatus es	*Thou haſt been eſteemed*	Tu doctus eras
Arbor plantata eſt	*A furrow has been plowed*	Litera lecta erat
Nos æſtimati ſumus	*We have been loved*	Nos viſi eramus
Vos laniati eſtis	*Ye have been planted*	Vos capti eratis
Sulci arati ſunt	*Trees have been torn*	Templa ſtructa erant
Ego raptus fui	*I have been born*	Ego doctus fueram, *&c.*
Tu territus fuiſti	*Thou haſt been ſought*	*Thou hadſt been read*
Flagrum factum fuit	*A lock has been ſhut*	*A Church had been built*
Nos nati fuimus	*We have been frighted*	*We had been taken*
Vos petiti fuiſtis	*Ye have been ſnatched*	*Ye had been ſeen*
Seræ clauſæ fuērunt	*Whips have been made*	*Letters had been read.*

Future Perf. Ego amatus ero vel fuero *I ſhall have been loved*, &c.

606. So in Verbs Deponents ſignifying Actively.

Loqui *to ſpeak*, Locutus eſſe *or* fuiſſe *to have or had ſpoken*
Labi *to ſlip*, Lapſus eſſe *or* fuiſſe *to have or had ſlipt*
Mirari *to wonder*, Miratus eſſe *or* fuiſſe *to have or had wondred.*

Præter Perfect.		Præt. pluperf.
Ego locutus ſum	*I have endeavoured*	Ego greſſus fueram
Tu miratus es	*Thou haſt ſlipped*	Tu miſſus fueras
Coquus mentitus eſt	*The Sun has riſen*	Miniſter meditatus fuerat
Nos lapſi ſumus	*We have lyed*	Nos opinati fueramus
Vos conati eſtis	*Ye have wondred*	Vos faſſi fueratis
Stellæ ortæ ſunt	*Apes have ſpoken*	Epiſcopi precati fuerant.

§. XI. The

§. XI. The Eleventh Phraſe.

Q. *Which is the Eleventh Phraſe?*

607. *A.* As Adv. and Prep. are joyned to Verbs by the V. Phraſe, ſo may they be to Adject. Subſt. or Adverbs; as, *A man* very good.

Q. *Which are the two Words in this Phraſe?*

608. *A.* The I. is an Adj. or Subſt. or Adverb ſet down by the former Rules, the II. is an Adverb or Præpoſ. added to it.

N. B. So that all that you learn by the XI. Phraſe is to put an Adverb or Præpoſ. to ſome word going before.

Q. *Give me the* EXEMPLES *of this.*

609. *A.*———

Salix eſt arbor haud alta	Tu habes uxorem vix ſanam
Senes ſunt bis pueri	Nemo vivit liber à curis.

Q. *Which is the* RULE *of the Eleventh Phraſe?*

610. *A.* As Adverbs and Præpoſitions are joyned to Verbs, ſo are they to Adjectives, Subſtantives and Adverbs; as,

Pauci pueri ſunt ſemper gnavi	*Few wives are always mild*
Omnes fere ſunt ignavi	*Almoſt all Churches are large*
Tu habes fratrem vix virum	*Be not cruel towards any animal*
Bos jacet feſſus de via	*Dogs are fierce againſt bears*
Quercus ſtat procul à ſtabulo.	*The ſtable ſtood far from the oak.*

§. XII. The Twelfth Phraſe.

Q. *Let us ſee now the twelfth ſtep towards making a ſentence.*

611. *A.* The Twelfth Phraſe is juſt like the Seventh, and is uſed when we are to expreſs that a thing is ſuch or ſuch to or for any thing; as, *A child is* dear to *the father. Learning is* uſefull to *boys.*

Q. *Which are the two Words in the Twelfth Phraſe?*

612. *A.* The I. is an Adject. ſet down by the Tenth Rule; the II. is a Subſt. of the Dative caſe added to it.

Q. *What doth this teach more than I knew before?*

A. Onely to put a Dative after an Adjective put Acquiſitively.

Q. *Give me the* EXEMPLES.

613. *A.*———

Puer eſt charus parenti	Hordeum habetur gratum ſuibus
Literæ ſunt utiles pueris	Piper eſt acre palato
Stultus vir non eſt idoneus agro	Labores ſunt moleſti corpori.

Q. *Give*

Q. *Give me the* RULE.

614. *A.* When you expreſs that a thing is *ſuch* or *ſuch*, *to* or *for* another,
I. Put down the Adject. according to the tenth Rule.
II. Put to it the Subſt. name of that thing in the Dative Caſe.

Or, Adjectives that betoken **profit** or **diſprofit**, **likeneſs** or **unlikeneſs**, *&c.* require a Dative Caſe; as,

Chriſtus eſt bonus animæ piæ	*Thunderbolts are not good to men*
Jeſus erit ſimilis amanti patri	*Devils are like to roaring lions*
Vir pius non eſt diſſimilis filio	*They are not unlike to fierce ſerpents*
Sapiens mulier non eſt gravis viro	*Wiſe husbands are not grievous to wives*
Pumex videtur par marmŏri	*Marbles are equal to pumices*
Sapphirus non eſt impar rubino	*Rubies are unequal to ſapphires*
Libra eſt par duodecim unciis	*Twelve ounces are equal to a pound*
Tuſſis non eſt levis pueris	*The plague is no light thing to us*
Sævi viri ſunt mites nemini	*A mild man is cruel to none*
Tu eſto comis cunctis diſcipulis	*Be ye courteous to your enemies*
An tu putas hoſtem amicum hoſti	*Can enemies be friendly to enemies?*
Publica res eſt communis omnibus	*Publick things are common to each one*
Rex habet hortum proprium ſibi	*Kings have thrones proper to them.*

§. XIII. The Thirteenth Phraſe.

Q. *What is the thirteenth and laſt Phraſe?*

615. *A.* The Thirteenth Phraſe is like the Eighth, and is when an Adject. hath after it a Genitive Caſe; as, A man *greedy of money*.

Q. *Which then are the two Words related to one another here?*

616. *A.* The I. is an Adject. ſet down by the Tenth Rule.
The II. is a Subſt. of the Genitive Caſe put to it; as,

Milites debent eſſe gnari armorum — Hic puer eſt rudis literarum.

Q. *What Adjectives are they that govern a Genitive Caſe?*

617. *A.* Not all Adjectives have a Gen. Caſe but onely thoſe that ſignify,

1. { *Able*, *as*, potis, compos, potens, *Able*. Patiens *able to bear*.
   { or *Unable*, as, impos, impotens, *unable*. Impatiens *unable to bear*.

2. { *Knowing*, as, Certus, doctus, peritus, *skilfull*. Memor *mindfull*.
   { or *Ignorant*, as, Incertus, indoctus, imperitus, immemor, rudis.

3. { *Deſirous*, as, amans, avārus, *greedy*. Cupĭdus *covetous*.
   { or *Regardleſs*, as, largus, negligens, *negligent*. Prodigus *prodigal*.

Q. *Now give me the* RULE *of the Thirteenth Phraſe.*

618. *A.* To declare that any thing is { Able or Unable } { Knowing or Ignorant } { Deſirous or Regardleſs } of any thing.

I. Put

I. Put down the Adjective according to the Tenth Phraſe,
And II. To it put the Subſt. in the Genitive Caſe;
Or, *Adjectives that ſignify* Deſire, Knowledge, Remembrance, Ignorance, *and ſuch like, require a Genitive Caſe*; as,

Vir ebrius non eſt compos mentis	*Sober men are maſters of themſelves*
Mulier laſciva eſt impos animi	*Wanton women are not miſtreſſes of their heart*
Verus Deus eſt potens ventorum	*Falſe Gods have not power of thunder*
Sævi heri ſunt impotentes iræ	*Fooliſh mothers can't manage their love*
Tua filia eſt certa eundi	*No man can be ſure of living*
Ego video te eſſe doctum pilæ	*Boys ought not to be skill'd at dice*
Duces debent eſſe periti belli	*The Maſter is a skilfull uſer of the harp*
Nos debemus vivere memŏres mortis	*Ye ought to be mindfull of vertue*
Homines vivunt immemores officii	*Be not unmindfull of the laſt hour*
Vir amans vini eſt prodigus nummi	*Men lovers of ale are laviſh of gold*
Tu es cupidus novarum rerum	*Ye are covetous of little things.*

Mr. And thus you have ſeen the Thirteen Phraſes and their Rules, by which Words are put rightly together to make Sentences.

Sch. *Are theſe thirteen ſufficient to guide one in making any ſentence?*

619. *A.* They are ſufficient, and comprehend all the ways of putting words to words aright in the Latin Tongue. Onely obſerve,

620. *N. B.* That ſome Verbs Neuter and Paſſive, and ſome Adjectives, have after them a Verb Infinite not yet accounted for; as,

Ego videor {videre ſtellam cadentem	*We ſeem to hear trumpets ſounding*
Tympanum dicitur dare ſonum	*Drums are ſaid to make a noiſe.*
Quis homo poteſt arcere fulgura	*We cannot feel ſpirits*
Pueri gaudent tangere fræna	*Girls rejoice to trim up the head*
Senes non putantur apti regi	*Young Men are apt to be deceived.*

But of theſe an account ſhall be given in the next book.

CHAP. XVII.

Three ſorts of Simple Sentences.

Q. *HOW many of theſe Phraſes go to make one Sentence?*

621. *A.* Sometimes one; as, Ego ſto. Tu cubas. Supellex emitur. 2. Sometimes two; as, O Thoma, tu garris. Homo portat pondus.

3. Sometimes three; as, O Jesu, tu ſerva nos. Magnum epulum fit nobis.
4. Sometimes four; as, Fœmina bona eſt rara avis.
5. Sometimes 5. as, Stultus homo vix implevit ventrem exilem.
6. Sometimes 6. as, Omnis familia non poteſt dormire in uno lecto.
7. Sometimes 7. as, Vaſta poma non vorantur ab hominibus ſanæ mentis.
8. Sometimes 8. as, Eccleſia exercitus Jeſu Chriſti debet pugnare contra hoſtem Diabolum, *&c.*

Q. *How many ſorts of Sentences are there?*

622. *A.* A Sentence is either ſingle or compounded.

Q. *What is a ſingle or ſimple Sentence?*

623. *A.* That which hath but one Verb finite in it; as,

Man's age is ſhort	*Man's age is not ſhort*
Ætas hominis eſt brevis	Ætas hominis non eſt brevis
Follow thou the guide	*Follow not thou the guide*
Tu ſequĕre ducem	Tu ne ſequere ducem
What man condemns himſelf?	*What man condemns not himſelf?*
Quis homo damnat ſeipſum?	Quis homo non damnat ſeipſum?

624. N. B. *Where you ſee,* I. *That every ſingle Sentence is either* Affirmative, *as* Age *is* ſhort; *or* Negative, *as* Age *is not ſhort.*

II. *That the* Engliſh *put their Negative Particle* Not, *after the Verb Finite, but the* Latins *put theirs,* non, haud, ne, *before it.*

Q. *How many ſorts of ſimple Sentences are there?*

625. *A.* Of ſimple Sentences there be three ſorts: 1. An *Interrogative* Sentence. 2. An *Aſſertive* Sentence. 3. An *Imperative* Sentence.

Q. *What is an Interrogative Sentence?*

626. *A.* An Interrogative Sentence is that by which a Queſt. is asked; as,

Quid eſt lacryma?	*What is the mane of an horſe?*
Quem hominem vocas tu?	*Which horſe can you manage?*
Quale inſtrumentum eſt ſiſtula?	*What inſtruments are pipes?*
An Pater tuus venit in urbem?	*Whether is your ſiſter gone to Church?*
Num vos cupitis adire rus?	*What? doſt thou deſire to learn?*

Q. *What is an Aſſertive Sentence?*

627. *A.* An Aſſertive Sentence is that wherein it is aſſerted that ſomewhat *is,* or *is not, doth* or *doth not, ſuffers* or *ſuffers not*; as,

Fumus non eſt gratus oculis	*The eyes cannot bear ſmoke*
Æſtas venit ante autumnum	*Autumn will come after ſummer*
Pulvis non ſeritur pro ſemine	*Men ſow not jewels for ſeeds.*

Q. *What is an Imperative Sentence?*

628. *A.* An Imperative Sentence is that wherein it *is laid* upon ſomewhat *to be,* or *not to be*; *to do,* or *not to do, &c.* as,

Tu eſto vir ſobrius	*Be ye ſober men*
Vos ne eſte barbari	*Let a woman keep her ſelf chaſte*
Puer ſervato ſe caſtum	*Let a ſparrow be roaſted.*

629. N. B.

629. N. B. I. *Interrogative and Aſſertive Sentences are made by the* Indic Mood; *but Imperative Sentences are made by the* Imperative.

630. II. *In Interrogative and Imperative Sentences the* Engliſh *ſet the Nom. Caſe after the Verb Finite, but the* Latins *either* before *or* after.

631. III. *Interrogative and Aſſertive Sentences are denyed by* non, haud, &c. *but Imperative by* ne.

632. IV. Interrogative Sentences have this mark (?) written after them, and Aſſertive and Imperative this (.) See all this in the former Exemples.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Compounded Double Sentences.

Q. *What is a Compounded Sentence?*

633. *A.* When two ſingle Sentences are joyned together by ſome Cople or Tye, they are called a Compound Sentence.

So then in a Compound Sentence there is,

I. One ſingle Sentence; as, *Life is ſhort.*

II. Another ſingle Sentence after it; as, *Art is long.*

III. Between theſe two a Cople is put to tye them together; as,

Life is ſhort, and *art is long.* *Life is ſhort,* but *art is long.*

Vita eſt brevis, & ars eſt longa. Vita eſt brevis, ſed ars eſt longa.

634. N. B. *After the firſt ſentence this mark* (,) *is to be written.*

Q. *What words may be the Coples to joyn two Sentences together?*

635. *A.* There are three ſorts of words which are *Coples.*

I. A Relative word, which rehearſeth and fetcheth over a foregoing Subſt. again; as, *Who, which, that,* Qui, quæ, quod.

II. A Comparative word whereby two things are compared together; as, Tantus, quantus; talis, qualis; tot, quot; tam, quam; ita, ut; &c.

III. A Conjunction; as, Et, que, quoque, ſed, vero, &c.

636. *N. B.* I. Sometimes there is in the firſt Sentence a Word relating to the Cople, and putting us in mind to expect it; as, Both *life is ſhort,* and *art is long.*

Thus ille *relates to* qui, tantus *to* quantus, tam *to* quam, & *to* &, neque *to* neque, aut *to* aut, quamvis *to* tamen, *as you ſhall ſee.*

637. II. The natural place of the Cople is between the two Sentences copled, and it is ſeldom removed thence; but,

1. *Quidem* is ſet after the firſt word of its ſentence.

2. *Quoque, autem, vero, enim,* after the firſt word of the ſecond Sentence.

3. *Que, ne* and *ve* are moreover adjoyned to that firſt word, as you ſhall ſee.

638. I. Exemples wherein the Relative is the Cople.

Miſer eſt ille homo, qui homo jacet æger ſub ſepe. 2. *Ph.*
Wretched are the men, which men lie ſick under hedges.
Felices ſunt mulieres, quas mulieres dolores non premunt. 4. *Ph.*
Happy is that woman, which woman grief does not preſs.
Nos ſerimus grana adoris, quæ grana aves vorant. 4. *Ph.*
Servants ſew the garments, which garments Kings put on.
Biblia ſunt liber Dei, præ quo libro cæteri libri debent ſperni. 6. *Ph.*
The Bible is the word of God, in which word we read our duty.
Aqua fluit per agros, in quibus agris ſegetes naſcuntur.
Waters flow in the field, through which field a crop grows.
Pueri fiunt hebẽtes, quibus pueris non licet ludere. 7. *Ph.*
The boy becomes dull, to which boy no play is given.
Matres ſunt lætæ, quarum matrum filii ſunt ſancti. 8. *Ph.*
The father is joyfull, which father's daughters are wiſe.
Vir datus eſt Mariæ, cujus viri nomen erat Joſephus.
A wife was given to Joſeph, which wife's name was Mary.
Judex non debet plectere homines, antequam peccaverint.
We cannot hear your words, before that you ſpeak them.
Hic annus eſt ſecundus, poſtquam nos cœpimus diſcere.
I ſhall think my ſelf wretched, after that you ſhall die.

639. Exemples of a Comparative Cople.

Tantus rex eſt Carolus, *quantus* rex nemo fuit.
So big *men were the giants*, as ſo big *no body now is.*
Emi hodie *talem* equum, *qualem* equum tu nunquam vendidiſti.
I heard to day ſuch *a ſermon*, as *you never heard in your life.*
Tot erant Apoſtoli, *quot* erant Tribus Iſraelis.
So many *Miniſters ought to be*, as *there are Churches.*
Tam dulce eſt Saccharum, *quam* amarum eſt fel.
So *pious was Abel*, as *Cain was impious.*
Plures ſunt hic ignavi pueri, *quam* aliquis putaret.
There are more bruk girls here, than *you would think.*
Solomon fuit ſapientior, *quam* alii reges ſunt.
The giants were greater than *other men now are.*

640. Exemples where Conjunctions are Copies.

Viſne tu ſpuere, *an* non vis? *Will ye play*, or *will ye not?*
Siniſtra manus gerit ſcutum, *&* dextra manus tenet gladium.
Old men do die, and *young men get their riches.*

Vita

Vita noſtra fugit, horæque volant. *Time fleeth*, and *death cometh*.
Porci gerunt aſperas ſetas, oves *quoque* habent mollem lanam.
Hogs uſe to eat foul meats, *dogs* alſo *devour dead fleſh*.
Ego *neque* habeo vas butyri, *neque* ego video partem panis.
Neither *have we a piece of cheeſe*, nor *have we a bit of fleſh*.
Faber *aut* ſecat lignum, *aut* parat inſtrumenta ſua.
Either *keep thou order in the ſchool*, or *leave the School*.
Vel Magiſter doceto diſcipulos, *vel* diſcipuli linquunto Magiſtrum.
Vos *quidem* tenetis libros, *ſed* ego non ſentio vos legere.
Multi *quidem* ſunt falſi dii, *aſt* eſt unus verus Deus?
Many men indeed *are taught*, but *few men are learned*.
Herus legit, vos *vero* luditis, *or* vos *autem* luditis.
Ego cædo te, *quia* malus es, *We love you*, becauſe *ye are good*.
Non decet me ſequi vos, *namque* vos (*or* vos *enim*) omnes eſtis cæci.
It becomes all you to hear me, for *I have always been wiſe*.
Ego monſtrabo vobis duo genera bullarum, *ſi* venietis ad me.
Wilt thou ſhew to me the new kind of pears, if *I come to thee?*
Tota ſchola jam ibit in campos, *ni* (or *niſi*) Magiſtri vetant.
In vain men are exerciſed in learning, unleſs (if not) *the Rules be true*.
Sol ortus eſt, *ergo* (*igitur*) dies eſt. *The Moon ſhines*, therefore *it's night*.
Quamquam (*quamvis*) tu habes magnas opes, *tamen* es pauperrimus.
Although *the path of life be narrow*, yet *the juſt man walks in it*.
Ego *ita* feci, *ut* pater juſſit. *We have not done* ſo, as *the thing requires*.

§. II. The Uſe of the Subjunctive Mood.

Q. *It was ſaid* N°. 520. *that Verbs of the Subjunct. Mood were to be put after other Verbs in a Compounded Sentence, now ſhew me how they are ſo put.*

641. *A.* The Subjunctive Mood is to be uſed in Compounded Sentences,

1. Always after *ut* or *uti* ſignifying that, and *ne* that not.
2. Always after *ut* or *utinam* ſignifying O that, and then the Subjunct. Mood is called the Optative or Wiſhing Mood.
3. Sometimes after *Si*, *ni*, *niſi*, *cum*, *quamvis*, *&c.* as here you ſee.

642. I. In the firſt Conjugat. Præſ. or Fut. Imperf.

Res poſcit ut
- Ego cœnem
- Tu jentes
- Stilla mānet
- Nos lavemus
- Vos juretis
- Canes latrent.

The matter requires that
- *I ſhould walk*
- *Thou ſhould'ſt howl*
- *The ſouldier ſhould fight*
- *We ſhould cry*
- *Ye ſhould wail*
- *Towers ſhould totter*.

643. In the Præter Imperf. Subj.

Quis	Ego narem	*Who*	*I was breakfasting*
fuit	Tu ululares	*were*	*Thou wast supping*
hic	Columbus volaret	*here*	*The witness was swearing*
cum	Nos erraremus	*when*	*We were walking*
	Vos ploraretis		*Ye were wandring*
	Lyræ sonarent.		*Wolves were howling.*

644. In the Præterperf. Subj.

Omnes	Ego pugnavĕrim	*All men*	*I have reigned*
nove-	Tu naveris	*see how*	*Thou hast plowed*
runt ut	Planca crepaverit	*that*	*The dragon has flown*
	Nos clamaverĭmus		*We have wailed*
	Vos erraveritis		*Ye have swum*
	Domus vacaverint.		*The winds have breathed.*

645. In the Præter-pluperf. Optative.

O utinam	Ego cœnavissem !	*O, that*	*I had cried out !*
	Tu jentavisses !		*Thou hadst howled !*
	Casa steviſſet !		*The Town had wailed !*
	Nos erravissemus !		*We had swimmed !*
	Vos migravissetis !		*Ye had flown !*
	Rosæ spiravissent !		*Men had considered !*

646. In the Future Perfect Subjunctive.

Vos ve-	Ego cœnavero]	*Go ye*	*I shall have walked*
nite huc	Tu jentaveris	*hence,*	*Thou shalt have supped*
cum	Pater ambulaverit	*when*	*The Cat shall have howled*
	Nos clamaverĭmus		*We shall have breakfasted*
	Vos plantaveritis		*Ye shall have cryed out*
	Testes juraverint.		*The Citizens shall have flitted*

N. B. So the other Conjugations may be gone through.

CHAP. XIX.

The Summ of all said before about putting Words together to make Sentences.

647. *N. B.* I. An Interjection mostly maketh a sense by its self.
648. II. A Conjunction is onely used to joyn two Sentences together.
649. III. The other six Parts of Speech are put into Sentences by 13 Rules.

§. *The*

§. *The Summ of the* XIII. *Phraſe-Rules:*

650. I. In every ſimple Sentence there is one Verb Finite, and but one, which agrees with its Nominative Caſe by *R.* II.

651. II. A Noun, Pronoun or Participle if it be a Subſtantive of

1. The Vocative Caſe is onely uſed after O, to call by, by *R.* I.
2. The Nom. *Caſe* is uſed either { 1. before a Verb Finite, by *R.* II. / 2. or after Verbs of Being, *&c.* by *R.* III.
3. The Accuſative *Caſe* is uſed upon three accounts, { 1. Before Verbs Infinite, by *N°.* 542. / 2. After Verbs Tranſitives, by *R.* IV. / 3. After the firſt 27 Præp. *&c.* by *R.* VI. *N°.* 567, 569.
4. The Ablative onely after the 12 Præp. *&c.* by *R.* VI. *N°.* 568, 569.
5. The Dative is uſed either { 1. After Verbs put Acquiſitively, by *R.* VII. / 2. After Adjectives, by *R.* XII.
6. The Genitive is uſed either { 1. After another Subſtantive, by *R.* IX. / 2. Or after Adjectives of *ability*, *&c.* by *R.* XIII.

652. III. A Noun, Pronoun or Participle Adjective ever agrees with its Subſtantive in Caſe, Gender and Number, by *R.* X.

653. IV. Adverbs and Præpoſitions are joyned { Either 1. to Verbs, by *R.* V. / Or 2. to Adject. or other words, by *R.* XI.

654. *N. B.* Infinite Verbs and Part. are both Nouns and Verbs, and ſo

1. Infinite Verbs, Supines and Gerunds being Subſt. are uſed as other Subſt.
2. Other Participles being Adjectives follow the Rules of Adjectives.
3. All theſe conſidered as Verbs have ſuch Caſes as their Verbs have.

CHAP. XX.

What Words may be left out in a Sentence.

Q. *Is there any thing more yet to be known about Sentences?*

655. *A.* Two things are yet to be known about Sentences.

I. That whatever Words may be as well underſtood when left out, as they would be, if they were mentioned, may be left out.

Q. *Upon what accounts may this be done?*

656. *A.* Words may be left out upon four accounts.

Q. Firſt, *when may words be left out?*

657. *A.* I. When a word has been mention'd juſt before, and may be ſuppoſed to be kept in mind, then it is oft left out, as, Cæſar venit, & vidit, & vicit, you need not ſay, Cæſar venit, & Cæſar vidit, & Cæſar vicit.

Ego nec habeo nummos, nec cupio — *Thou art wanton in words, and works*
Nos ſcripſimus, plus quam vos — *Ye have eaten more, than we*

Hæc

Hæc veſtis eſt patris, *viz.* veſtis	*This book is the maſter's,* ſc. *book.*
Cujus eſt hic liber? *R.* meus	*Whoſe houſe is this?* A. *Ours.*

658. Therefore in a Relative Sentence, the Antecedent word is ſeldom repeated, but be ſure you fetch it over in your thought; as,

Ego amo Chriſtum, qui me emit	*I bought the boots which be there*
Tu habes uxorem, quam non amas	*The wine is bad, which you ſent me*
Vides templum, quod Rex ſtruxit	*We teach boys, which learn nothing*
Quem ſermonem audis, non eſt meus	*What words I ſpake, thoſe I deny.*

Q. *When* ſecondly *may words be left out?*

659. *A.* II. When any word is to be mentioned ſtraight, if it can well be underſtood, it may be left out in the former part; as,

Placent populo, quas facio fabulas	*Drink ye red, or white wine*
Audio & miror tua verba	*I ever did, and ever will love you*
Unus, Una, Unum } cecidit ex { puerorum, puellarum, templorum. numero	*The firſt of the Kings is dead* / *The ſecond of the Queens is fled* / *The beſt of the Churches is burnt.*

Q. *When* thirdly *may a word be left out?*

660. *A.* III. When the thought is expreſſed by ſome other means; as, Quis eſt ille? pointing to a man, you need not ſay, Quis homo eſt ille homo?

Q. *When* fourthly *may words be left out?*

661. *A.* IV. Thoſe words which upon the mentioning of others muſt needs be ſuppoſed to be meant, may be left out; as, *When you come to* Paul's, *then turn to the* left, every body knows you mean *Paul's Church* and the *left hand*, therefore they need not be expreſſed.

See Exemples of this in ſeveral Phraſes.

662. In the I. Phraſe the Interjection may be left out, and the Vocative onely expreſſed; as, Cur tu mentiris, Petre? Parce mihi, Domine.

663. In the II. Phraſe the Nominative when upon mentioning the Verb it is certainly known, need not be expreſſed; as, to

Amo, amabam, docebo, lego, legam	no word can be the Nom. C. but	Ego	and therefore they may be left out.
Amas, amabas, ama, docebis, legis, audi		Tu	
Amamus, docemus, legebamus, audimus		Nos	
Amatis, amate, docetote, legetis, audite		Vos	
Aiunt te furere. Dicunt Regem venire		Homines	
Pluit, grandinat, fulminat		Nubes	

N. B. *But you cannot ſay* amat, docebat, legunt, audient, &c. *without the* Nom. Caſe, *becauſe none can know* what *it is that* loves, teaches, &c. *it may be* Pater amat, *or* mater amat, *or* canis amat, *or* uxor, &c.

664. In the VI. Phraſe, 1. Sometimes the Præpoſition is left out, 2. Sometimes its Caſe. 3. Sometimes both.

§. 1. *The*

§ 1. *The Præpoſition is left out in* 12 *places.*

665. 1. The word that ſignifies { the *Inſtrument* by which / the *Cauſe* for which / the *Manner* after which } any thing is done, it uſually put in the Ablative Caſe without a Præpoſition; as,

Findimus radicem quercūs raſtro	*We dig our Gardens with ſpades*
Scindimus aream uberem ligone	*Smiths poliſh not arms with a mallet*
Pungimus boves pigros acu	*A bald crown is veiled with a peruke*
Diſcipuli tacent metu	*They puniſh a ſlow boy with the rod*
Gaudemus rebus tuis proſperis	*Rejoyce not for the death of another*
Sentio me eſſe laſſum ſcribendo	*I ſee that you are tired with playing*
Ordo ſervatur facili labore	*Works are done by heavy labours*
Omnes homines ſunt pares natura	*A ſpeech is made with much care*
Mors venit pede celeri.	*The hours flie with ſwift feet.*

666. 2. The word of Price, at which a thing is rated, is put in the Ablative Caſe without the Præpoſition; as,

Jentamus hodie tribus aſſibus	*We dined yeſterday for one* as
Emi duos libros uno ſemiſſe	*I ſold my book for three half-aſſes*
Gemmæ venduntur vili pretio.	*They ſell jewels at an huge price.*

Except theſe Genitives Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, &c.

667. 3. After words ſignifying to be *full* or *empty of any thing*, the Ablative Caſe is ſet down without the Præpoſition; as,

Hic ſaccus eſt plenus hamis	*Theſe ſacks are full of aſhes*
Tuum cerebrum eſt inane virtute	*That barrel was empty of ale*
Mater mea eſt vidua viro ſuo.	*My brother is widowed of his wife.*

So egēre and carēre have an Ablat. without a Præpoſition; as,

Sum dives quanquam caream nummis	*You can't read if you want a book*
Homo pauper eget omnibus rebus.	*Your pipes need a ſtrong wind.*

668. 4. Fungor, fruor, utor, potior; dignus, indignus, have an Ablat. Caſe without a Præp. as,

Juſtus vir fungitur officio ſuo	*Unjuſt men diſcharge not their duties*
Acer miles fruitur triumpho	*Smart ſouldiers enjoy triumphs*
Segnes fures non potiuntur præda	*A lazy leader gets no ſpoil*
Anus macra utitur baculo ſuo	*Fat old men uſe their ſtaffs*
Manus larga eſt digna laude.	*Bad works are unworthy of fame.*

669. 5. *Ad* is left out before *rus* and *domus*, and Proper Names of Towns; as,

Hodie iturus ſum Londinum	*Many men are going to Rome*
Jubeo, mi fili, ut eas domum	*Go and carry this burthen home*
Jam ibimus rus, ibique venabimur.	*O child, flee thou into the countrey.*

670. II. After Verbs of *motion* the firſt Supine is put, *Ad* left out; as,

Eo amatum	*Came ye hither to ſleep?*
Veni viſum te	*We go to hear ſermons.*
Vadimus venatum.	*I am going to accuſe the ſcholars.*

671. 6. Before the meaſure of *Time* or *ſpace*, *ad* or *per* is oft left out in Latin, and through or for in Engliſh; as,

Totam hyemem dormis	*Bees gather honey all the ſummer*
Carolus regnavit triginta annos	*I have been here a whole hour*
Hic liber eſt craſſus tres digitos.	*That river is ten foot broad.*

672. 7. *A*, *ab* or *ex* ſignifying *from* a place, coming before *Rus*, *domus*, and the Proper Names of Towns is left out; as,

Unde venis? Venio rure	*The goats are come out of the Countrey*
Pater dudum exivit domo	*When came your ſon from home*
Epiſcopus olim migravit Roma.	*The Queen hath removed from London.*

673. 8. *In* before *rus*, and Proper Names of Towns is left out; as,

Procĕres ſolent venari rure	*Hares uſe to lurk in the Countrey*
Omnes artes valebant Athenis.	*Scipio beat Hannibal at Carthage.*

674. But if the Name of the Town be of the firſt or ſecond Declenſion, and of the Singular Number, it muſt be put in the Genitive, and *in urbe* left out; as,

Quid faciam Romæ, *for* in urbe Romæ. *What will ye do at London?*

N. B. *So* Humi, domi, militiæ, belli, *are uſed in the Genitive*; *as*,

Domi bellique ſimul viximus	*I tarry at home, thou at war.*

675. 9. *In* before words of *Time*, is oft left out; as,

Stellæ lucent nocte, non die	*We ſtudy a-days not a-nights*
Sol cadit veſperi, oritur mane	*Say thy prayers morning and evening*
Nives non cadunt menſe Julio.	*Hail hath oft fallen in Auguſt.*

§ How to turn a Compounded Sentence into a Simple one by the Ablative Caſe abſolute.

676. 10. When we are to expreſs that *a thing is*, *does*, or *ſuffers*, When, While or after that any *thing is*, *does*, or *ſuffers*, we may

1. Caſt away the Copies When, While, after.
2. Then turn the Nominative after them into the Ablative Caſe.
3. Turn the Verb into a Participle Adj. to agree with it, leaving out the Præpoſition, and this is called the Ablative Caſe Abſolute.

N. B. *If the Verb be put* Imperfectly *turn it into* ans, ens *or* iens; *as*,

Cum Rex veniret, hoſtes fugerunt	Rege veniente, hoſtes fugerunt
Dum Magiſter docet, pueri ludunt	Magiſtro docente, pueri ludunt
Cum nos cœnabimus, tibiæ ſonabunt.	Nobis cœnantibus, tibiæ ſonabunt.

N. B. *But*

N. B. *But if it ſignifie* Perfectly, *change it into the* Participle *in* tus, ſus *or* xus; as,

Poſtquam ſol eſſet ortus, ivi venatum	Sole orto, ivi venatum
Cum ædes fuiſſent purgatæ, ancilla dormivit	Ædibus purgatis, anc. &c.
Cum cauſa eſt judicata, latro ſuſpenditur	Torre accenſo quærimus libros.

Imitations.

While the Maſter exhorts, the men dig	*The Maſter exhorting, the men dig*
As the barber clips, the hairs fall	*When a gale blows, the boughs move*
The fiſh being caught, the net is taken up	*The Maſter raging, the boys tremble*
When ſtripes ſound, hearts are in pain	*After London was built, the bridge was made*
After the doors are ſhut, ye can't enter	*The wife ſeen, the husband fled.*

677. 11. Words of the *Comparative Degree* ſignifying more ſo than another thing, may have after it the Name of *that thing* in the Ablative without the Præp. as,

Hic vir eſt mollior muliere, *i. e.* præ	*That woman is ſtouter than a man*
Pater meus eſt hilarior matre	*My ſiſter is ſadder than my brother*
Tu videris ſurdior omnibus ſaxis.	*I ſeem brisker than a liveflame.*

678. 12. *After Verbs of* Warning, Accuſing, Condemning *and* Acquitting, *the Præpoſition* De *is oft left out*; *as*,

Ego condemnabo te eodem crimine.	*You are accuſed of many crimes.*

679. § II. Sometimes the Caſe is left out; as,

Pater jam exivit, *viz.* domo	*Drive you out the dog*, viz. *out of doors*
I præ, ſequar, *viz.* præ me	*I will go before*, viz. *you*
Pone venit conjux, *viz.* me.	*Come you behind*, viz. *me.*

680. § III. Sometimes both the Præp. and its Caſe are left out.

So I. After Verbs of *warning, accuſing, condemning* and *acquitting De Crimine* may be left out; becauſe none are *accuſed* but *of a crime*; as,

Accuſo te furti, *i. e.* de crimine furti	*You are accuſed of adultery*
Condemnamus vos doli mali.	*You condemn us of evil frauds.*

681. So II. All words put *Partitively*, *i. e.* denoting *Part out of many*, have a Genit. after them, *ex numero* being underſtood; as, *Inſtead of* Tu es unus ex numero Diſcipulorum, Tu es unus Diſcipulorum.

Magiſter cecidit ſeptem puerorum	*I ſaw three of the Magiſtrates*
David Rex fuit primus poetarum	*None of the girls can reade*
Pauci virorum ſunt boni	*Ten of the Apoſtles were ſlain*
Utrum horum mavis accipe	*Gather whether of the apples you will*
Alter fratrum cecidit in bello.	*The other of the ſiſters is faireſt.*

682. In the VII. Phr. the Dative when known may be left out; as,

Da panem, *viz.* mihi.	*Reach the cup*, i. e. *to me.*

683. In the VIII. Phr. the firſt Subſtantive may be left out, *viz.* when upon hearing the ſecond, it is well enough underſtood; as,

Venimus ad Pauli, *viz.* templum. *When you come to St. Peters, ſtop.*

684. In the IX. One of the Subſtantives is left out, *viz.* when, *&c.* as,

Nunquam vidi Regem, *viz.* Jacobum. *My father is come to Town,* i.e. *London.*

685. In the X. The Adjective omitted when eaſily underſtood; as,

Monſtra te virum, *viz.* fortem. *She ſhews her ſelf a woman,* i.e. *weak.*

Eſpecially the Poſſeſſives *meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter* are ſo left out; as,

Vidiſtine Patrem hodie? *viz.* tuum *Where is your ſiſter?*
Ignis urit crura, *viz.* mea *Take ye up your books*
Tu ita te geris erga matrem? *How carry ye your ſelves ill to your Mr?*

686. The Subſtantive is moſt frequently omitted.

1. *Homo* is left out; as,

Quis me vocat? *Whom do ye call?*
Juvenis fiet ſenex *The young deſire to be old*
Amicus juvabit amicum *The friendly love the friendly*
Pauperes cupiunt videri divites *The rich deſpiſe the poor*
Dominus novit viam piorum *To day I heard one preaching*
Rex & Regina ſunt beati, *viz.* homines. *The man and his wife are righteous.*

687. 2. *Menſis* is left out in the twelve names of Months; as,

Rex mortuus eſt ſexto die Februarii *We began the fifth of October*
Hic eſt primus dies Januarii. *And ended the eighth of December.*

688. 3. *Manus* is oft underſtood as *Hand* in Engliſh; as,

Chriſtus ſedet ad dextram Patris *Turn you to the right*
Cur prehendis me ſiniſtra. *I will go to the left.*

689. 4. *Negotium* and *Officium* in Latin, and **Thing** or **It** in Engliſh are frequently left out when they may be underſtood; as,

Lupus eſt triſte ſtabulis *To write a ſhort letter is eaſie*
Mentiri non eſt meum *To number the ſands of the ſea is hard*
Omnia ſunt miſera in bello *It's rare to ſee a wiſe woman*
Recte agere intereſt veſtra *It concerns you to be good.*
i. e. eſt inter veſtra negotia i. e. *It is among your concerns*
Puerorum eſt (officium) parere Magiſtris. *It's your duty to obey Kings.*

§ Words left out in a Compound Sentence.

Q. *What words may be left out in a Compounded Sentence?*

690. *A.* In a Compounded Sentence,

1. Sometimes the firſt Sentence is left out,
2. Sometimes the Cople is left out,
3. Sometimes both the firſt Sentence and the Cople;

} that is when they are as well underſtood.

691. Some-

691. Sometimes the firſt Sentence is omitted; as,
Utinam cecidiſſes in bello: *ſupply* O. Ut vales? *i.e.* quæro *or* rogo.

692. 2. Sometimes the Cople is omitted; as,
Velim, cures ſalutem tuam, *i.e.* velim ut, &c.
Rogo, ſcribas ad me de iſta re. for *ut* ſcribas

693. 3. Sometimes both the firſt Sent. and the Cople are left out; as,
Eas per me in malam crucem, *i. e. licet ut* eas, &c.
Scribas ad me de rebus omnibus, *i. e. fac ut* ſcribas, &c.

§ The Cople That left out in Engliſh.

694. *N. B.* The Cople That is oft left out in Engliſh but not in Latin; as,

I deſire (that) *you would ſup with me.*	Rogo ut cœnes mecum.
I think I ſaw him, i. e. *that I*, &c.	Puto me vidiſſe illum.
We came after the rain was over, i. e.	*after that*, *not* poſt *but* poſtquam
It were here before we came, i. e. *before that*, *not* ante *but* antequam.	

695. Eſpecially when it is Relative *that*, *which*, *who*, *whom*, may be in Engliſh omitted but not in Latin; as,

This is the horſe I ſold to you	Hic eſt equus *quem* tibi vendidi
Give me the book you bought	Da mihi librum *quem* emiſti
Is this the reward ye ſpoke of, i. e. *of which.*	Hoccine eſt præmium de quo locuti eſtis.

CHAP. XXI.

The Words in a Sentence may be tranſplaced.

Q. *Which is the ſecond thing to be obſerved about Sentences?*
696. *A.* II. The Latins uſe not to place the words of a Sentence always in their *natural order* as they lie in ſenſe, but put them into ſuch order as will ſound ſweeteſt to the ear, but ſo that the ſenſe be not thereby darkened.
Q. *How may the Words of a Sentence be thus tranſpoſed?*
697. *A.* I. A Sentence of *two* words may be put *two* ways; as,
Ego vivo *or* Vivo ego. Dominus dicit *or* Dicit Dominus.

698. II. If there be *three* words in a Sent. it may be put *ſix* ways; as,

Vivimus vitam brevem	Vitam vivimus brevem	Brevem vitam vivimus
Vivimus brevem vitam	Vitam brevem vivimus	Brevem vivimus vitam.
So turn Ars eſt longa	Vita eſt brevis. Mœſta mors venit. &c.	

699. III. A Sentence of IV Words may be put 24 ways; as in this, you may begin ſix times with *vive*. And ſix times with *memor*.

Vive memor mortis venientis	Memor vive mortis venientis

Vive

Vive memor venientis mortis
Vive mortis memor venientis
Vive mortis venientis memor
Vive venientis mortis memor
Vive venientis memor mortis.

Memor vive venientis mortis
Memor mortis venientis vive
Memor mortis vive venientis
Memor venientis mortis vive
Memor venientis vive mortis.

And six times with *mortis.*

Mortis vive venientis memor
Mortis vive memor venientis
Mortis venientis vive memor
Mortis venientis memor vive
Mortis memor vive venientis
Mortis memor venientis vive.

And six times with *venientis.*

Venientis mortis vive memor
Venientis mortis memor vive
Venientis vive mortis memor
Venientis vive memor mortis
Venientis memor mortis vive
Venientis memor vive mortis.

So turn Animalia viva debent mori. Somnus premit vigiles oculos, &c.

700. IV. A Sent. of five words may be put 120 ways; as in this you may begin 24 times with Chriſtus, and 24 times with every other word.

Chriſtus emit homines ſanguine ſuo Chriſtus emit ſanguine homines ſuo
Chriſtus emit homines ſuo ſanguine Chriſtus emit ſanguine ſuo homines. &c.

So turn Cives cinxerunt murum gemino vallo.

701. V. A Sentence of Six words may be changed 720 ways, beginning 120 times with each of the Six words; as,
Pueri ſolent urgere parentes frequentibus epiſtolis, &c.

Q. *May we then miſplace all words in every Sentence as we pleaſe?*

702. *A.* No, not always, but you muſt in this as in all other things follow the uſe of the beſt ſpeakers, of which you ſhall have directions in the next Book.

N. B. *Some words in Engliſh are tranſplaced which you muſt ſet right.*

703. The Præpoſition is ſometimes ſet the laſt word in the Sentence; as, *My loſs of time I blame you for,* i. e. *I blame you for the loſs of my time.*

Eſpecially in Interrogative and Relative ſentences; as,
What ſpake you that for? i. e. *For what ſpake you that?*
Whom do you ſpeak againſt? What place came you from?
This is the man that I ſpoke to you of, i. e. *of whom I ſpoke.*

704. Oft we put the Nominat. after the Verb, and before it ſet *There* for which there is no Latin word; as,
There was a man, i. e. *A man was*; Fuit homo.
There came a boy to me; Venit ad me puer quidam.

705. If the Nominative Caſe to the Verb be a Verb Infinite, or a Sentence, we uſually ſet it after the Verb Finite, and put *It* before it; as,
It is an evil thing to lye, i. e. *to lye is an evil thing*; malum eſt mentiri.
It is the cuſtom of boys to ſlight their Maſters; Puerorum mos eſt ſpernere, &c.

Satis eſt ſi non nimis.

F I N I S.